BD 167 813

TITLE

Training Program for Operation of Emergency Venicles.

Instructor Lesson Plans.

INSTITUTION

INNOVATRIX, Fnc., Ingomar, Pa.

SPONS AGENCY

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (DOT).

Washington, D. C.

JEPORT NO

DOT-HS-802-564

PUB DATE

Oct **.78** ..

CONTRACT

DOT-HS-6-01336

NOTE AVAILABLE FROM

772p.; For related documents see CE 020 285-286.

Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing

Office, Washington, D.C. 20402 (Stock Number

050-003-00332-8)

EDRS PRICE DESCRIPTORS MF05/PC31 Plus Postage.

Behavioral Objectives: Course Content: Course Objectives; \*Driver Education; \*Emergency Squad

Personnel: Learning Activities

#### ABSTRACT

Unit lesson plans for the three parts of the Emergency Vehicle (EV) Operator training program are provided. The units in parts 1 and 2 are designed for use in a classroom setting and contain the following components: description of the unit: trainees knowledge objectives; instructor preparation activities; instructional content/presentation guidelines, and review exercises. Part 1 contains seven units, organized into twenty-one subjusts or modules, and includes the following topics: course introduction, the legal aspects of EV operation, selecting routes and reporting emergency operations, preparing to drive an EV, important physical forces and EV control, operating an EV, and handling unusual driving situations. Part 2 contains three units (six modules), one or which is to be taken by each trainee: operation of law enforcement wehicles, operation of ambulances, and operation of fire apparatus. Fart 3 provides in-vehicle practice exercises for the type of vehicle the trainee will drive. Contained in this unit are the following components: description of the unit; trainee performance objectives; instructor preparation activities; small area exercises (Dutton's Weave, stall parking, turnabouts), range exercises (evasive maneuver, serpentine course, Baird's Judgment, lane change, controlled braking, decreasing-width track), and skid-pad exercise. Each exercise contains a description of the exercise, procedures, possible rerformance problems, and criteria for excellent rating. (A tibliography and masters for transparencies are provided in the appendixes). (JH)

Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original document.



CE 020 286

# Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles

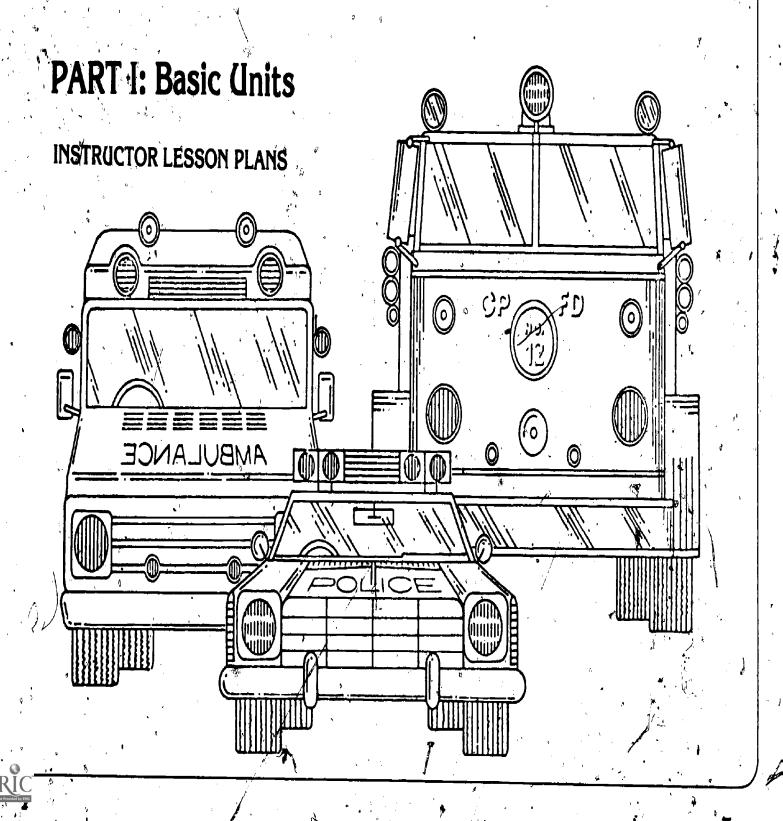
# INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRO-DUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGIN-ATING IT POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED, DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRE-SENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION

# Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles



TRAINING PROGRAM FOR OPERATION OF EMERGENCY VEHICLES

INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS

DOT HS 802-564 SGPO 050 003 00332



#### **ADDENDUM**

to

### TRAINING PROGRAM FOR OPERATION OF EMERGENCY VEHICLES INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS

The Instructor Lesson Plan of the "Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles" contains a full discussion of <u>Pursuit Driving</u> in the classroom unit entitled "Operation of Law Enforcement Vehicles;" however, no <u>In-Vehicle Practice Exercise in High Speed Pursuit Driving</u> is included in the range exercises, Part III.

In response to an identified need, a purchase order has now been initiated for the development and preparation of a one-lesson unit, as an addendum to Part III of the Instructor Lesson Plan of the "Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles," which will specifically address <a href="In-Vehicle Practice Exercises in High-Speed">In-Vehicle Practice Exercises in High-Speed</a>
<a href="Pursuit Driving for Law Enforcement Personnel">Pursuit Driving for Law Enforcement Personnel</a>. It is an icipated that this effort will require at least 60 days to develop and prepare. Review, publication, and shelf-stocking will be accomplished as quickly as possible after receipt of the material. This additional lesson unit may be ordered from GPO.

Inquiry regarding availability status of the <u>In-Vehicle Practice</u>

<u>Exercises in High-Speed Pursuit Driving for Law Enforcement Personnel</u>

may be addressed to:

Manpower Development Division, NTS-22 National Highway Traffic Safety Administration 400 7th Street, SW Washington, D.C. 20590

#### : FOREWORD

This document is one of three in the Emergency Vehicle Operation (EVO) Curriculum; they are:

- 1. Course Guide--Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles.
- 2. Instructor Lesson Plans-Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles.
- 3. Trainee Study Guide--Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles.

These documents were prepared for the U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) under contract no. DOT-HS-6-01336 by INNOVATRIX, Inc., Ingomar, PA.

The NHTSA Contract Technical Manager was Dr. C. Harding Veigel and, in the final months of the development effort, Mrs. Dorothy McKinney. Other NHTSA personnel who made significant contributions to the development of this curriculum were John Anderson, Richard Frederick, and Robert Motley. The assistance of all of these individuals is gratefully acknowledged.

Some of the others who contributed their time and expertise were: Dr. Aaron Adams, Cecil Arnold, and Dr. George Palmer of NHTSA; Norman Darwick, International Association of Chiefs of Police; Donald Flinn, International Association of Fire Chiefs; Richard Tippy and James Grisham of the National Safety Council; and Harold Rice, Pennsylvania State Police Academy. For those whom we have failed to mention: our appreciation and apologies.

And, our special thanks to the following people:



- Chief Patrick McCabe, McCandless Township Police Department, who contributed his time and allowed the INNOVATRIX staff to interview and observe his officers while they operated their patrol and ambulance vehicles.
- Fire Chief Kennelly, who assisted us in setting up observations and interviews with several stations of the City of Pittsburgh Fire Department.
- Ron Kane, our primary Pilot Test classroom instructor. Ron helped develop the police materials, taught them at the Pilot Test, and presented the entire basic program very effectively.
- Anthony Bizjak, who ably presented the fire service materials at the Pilot Test. Tony's knowledge of fire service vehicles and policies greatly assisted us in developing the fire service material.
- John Kinzer, who presented the ambulance materials at the Pilot Test and loaned his company's vehicles for the range exercises.
- Officer Mitchell, Spc. Ownby, and Spc. Butler, the Huntsville Police Academy driving instructors who pilot-tested the new program and provided excellent in-vehicle instruction. They guided our fire and ambulance range instructors and kept a fine sense of humor through the pressure of the Pilot Test (an accomplishment in Alabama in July).

Finally we would like to extend our special thanks and gratitude to:

- The City of Huntsville--which may have some of the finest people in the world and certainly has the most cooperative administrators this staff has ever worked with.
- Our Pilot Test trainees--who pitched in, learned a lot, and offered innumerable insights and suggestions which led to the improvement of the program.
- Officer Danny Barnes, Director of the Huntsville Police Academy and head of the fine Evasive Driving Program at Huntsville, Alabama. Officer Barnes was the take-charge man who smoothed administrative matters so much that most of them were never noticed by the staff. He not only made the Pilot Test fun, but also became a true and lasting friend.



### TABLE OF CONTENTS

NTRODUCTION TO THE INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS	
NIT A - INTRODUCTION	
Description of Unit	i
Instructor Preparation Activities	
Introduction	
The Trainee Study Guide	•
Organization of the Course	-
Definitions	- (
Schedule	- '
Schedule	- {
NIT B - SOME LEGAL ASPECTS OF EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATION	
Description of Unit	- ]
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives	- 2
Instructor Preparation Activities	. 7
Introduction	_ C
State Statutes on Emergency Vehicle Operation	۱۲
Interpreting the Law	1 1
Summary	17
Review Exercises	1/
	Ιğ
IT C - SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS	
Description of Unit	- 1
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives	- 3
Instructor Preparation Activities	· 4
	•

V

Selecting Routes			•		•		•								1 a 8
Reporting Emergency Vehicle Ope	ratio	nn c	• •	• •		• •	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	• .	1-6-7
Review Exercises		, ,	.*./ *	• •	\	• •	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	1	-0-11
								• •	•	• •	•		• •	1.	-C <b>-16</b>
UNIT D - BEFORE YOU DRIVE		•			•		ı								
Description of Unit	• •	• •	•' •				• •		•		•	•		•	l - D - 1
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives .	• •	• •	•		•				• ,		•			•	L-D-3
Instructor Preparation Activities				γ.	•							•		. ]	[ - <b>]</b> ] - <b>\$</b> .
Vehicle InspectionThe Operato	r's R	espo	nsi	bili	ty.	•		•					. ,	Ι.	. D <b>- 1</b>
Maintenance of the Emergency Ve	hicle	•										•		Ţ-	D
Preparing to Drive	•		• . •			•	•. •	•			, •			Į-	D-22
Practice in Inspection, Mainten	ance,	and	Pr	e-st	art	Pro	ced	lure	es					` I -	D-28
. Review Exercises		• •		/• •			• ,•	٠.	•		•	•		Ι-	D-30°
UNIT E - IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES										,	<b>4</b>				
Description of Unit														1	, ,
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives .		•	•	•••	• .	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	. 1	-E-I
Instructor Preparation Activities		• •	• •	• •	•		•	•	•	• •	•	•		. 1	-E-Z
. Introduction	• •	• •	• •	• •	• •		• •	)	•	• •	•	•	•	. l	-E-3
Major Physical Forces :	• •	• • ,	• . •	• •	· ·	•	. }	•	•	• •	•	• .	•	.` 1	-E-4
Weight Transfer	• •	• •	• •	• •	1.		• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	. 1	-E-5
Review Exercises	• •	• •		• ` • ·	′ <b>.</b> .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	I-	E-14
Review Exercises	• •	• •	• •	.• •		•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •		I -	E-18
UNIT F - OPERATION						5 <b>.</b>									•
Description of Unit					• •		• •							. I	-F-1
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives .	,, • •								,			:		Ţ	-E-1
Instructor Preparation Activities	•	• •						• '		•				. I	-F-8
								1				1	,		_
	****														,
ERIC		vi		12			•	_			,			,	
And that Provided by EDIG	Ä		•	IN					•						

Content/Structure of This	Unit		. •	•	•	•												3 i				,	I-F-1	2
Use of Lights and Siren .	·	•			•		•	•	· •				•	•	•			,	· *				I-F-1	3
Basic Control Tasks		•		•		•		•	•	•					•	•							I -:F - '1.	7
· Urban Driving				•		٠,	•						, 1	• • .			.,				4.		I-F-2	4
egotiating Intersections		į .				•				,	•			•.										Ω
Turning Around to Reverse	Direc	ti	on			١.			٠		•		•	<i>į</i> ,		` ,			ů,	,	•	•	I-F-4	'n
Following Another Vehicle		. ·				· •				• -				. ,		•		•	. ,	•		•		Q Q
Passing Another Vehicle .		•		•	1	•	•				,		•			. d	,	· · .		•.	•	•	- T - F - 5	7
Expressway Operation	,				•	• ,								•			•		•	•	•	•	1 - E - 6	'n
Driving at High Speed		•			•	•	ф •				•							•	•	•	• , _		i - F - 7(	٠ 6
Review Exercises		•	•		•					•	•		•	•					•	•	•	*	I-F-80	ą
UNIT G - HANDLING UNUSUAL SIT	1				ı												•	•	•	•	•		1 1 0.	•
											,													
Description of Unit	• •	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1-G-:	l
Trainees' Knowledge Objecti	ves .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	. I-G-3	3
Instructor Preparation Acti	vities		•	•		•				•													. I-G-9	5
Introduction			•	•		•		•							•					_			. I-G-1	7
Driving in Adverse Condit	ions .	•	•		٠					. ~	~ •				•				•	į,			. I-G-1	2
Handling Contingency Situ	ations		•		·														•	•	•	•	I-G-16	í
If You Must Pull Off the														,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	I 0 10	,



Review Exercises

I-G-50

#### PART II - OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES PART II - OPERATION OF AMBULANCES ₽ART II - OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS



viii

•	Selecting Routes Operating Systems Special Operating Considerations Basic Control Tasks Review Exercises	TT E 27
APPE	NDIX 1	<b>A</b>
I	Bibliography and References	1-1
APPE	NDIX 2	•
	Masters for Transparencies	2-1
PART	III - IN-VEHICLE PRACTICE	
	Description of Unit Trainee Performance Objectives Instructor Preparation Activities Safety Rules and Regulations Organization and Arrangement of Facilities Procedure for Each Maneuver Grading Standards Small-Area Exercises Range Exercises Skid Pad Exercise	III-1 III-3 III-5 III-7 III-7 III-7 III-8 III-8 III-11 III-17

# LIST OF FIGURES

ligure		,
No.		age Vo.
I-1	Passenger in Police Vehicle Wins Negligence Case	B-13
I - 2	Property Tax Increase Periling Midwest Town	
I-3	Official List of Ten Codes	C-11
I - 4	Inspection Checklist	D-16
I-5	Engine Components	D-17
I-6'	Key Indicator Chart	D-20
I - 7	Parallel Parking	F - 23
I - 8	Stopping Distances at Various Highway Speeds	F-51
I - 9	Entering and Eviting Engagement	ը_ <b>7</b> 1

#### Purpose of the Instructor Lesson Plans

The Instructor Lesson Plans (ILP) have been prepared for the U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, to assist instructors in conducting a five-day training program for Emergency Vehicle Operators. The ILP contains detailed plans for each unit of the course, including plans for the practical (in-vehicle) portion of the course.

The ILP is meant to be used in conjunction with the Trainee Study Guide (TSG). The TSG serves as both a text and a workbook for the trainees. Ample space is provided for trainees to take notes and answer questions.

#### Objectives of the Course

This course was developed to help ensure a comprehensive, basic level of training for emergency vehicle operators throughout the country. Specific instructional (knowledge) objectives for each unit appear at the beginning of each unit.

#### Description of the Course

This course is divided into three parts. Units A through G (Part I) consist of materials suitable for all emergency vehicle operators—regardless of service affiliation or type of vehicle that will be operated on the job. Differences due to vehicle type are noted in the text.

Part II appears in three distinct forms; one intended for use by police, one for fire personnel, and one for ambulance and rescue vehicle operators. The materials presented in these units are service-related. The service to which each unit relates is noted in the block at the bottom of each page of Part II.

1. 1

<sup>\*</sup>Including police, fire, ambulance, and rescue vehicle operators.

Part III consists of practical, in-vehicle training to be conducted on a driving range or other area suitable for such activity (e.g., abandoned airport runway). Included in this section are guidelines for setting up the driving range for the three different classes of vehicles (sedans and station wagons, vans and modules, and larger trucks such as fire apparatus). Guidelines for conducting the training, including safety prevaluntions, etc., are also covered in this section.

All of the training in Part III of the course is vehicle-related. Consequently, trainees should be divided into groups based upon the type of vehicle they will drive on the job, regardless of service affiliation. For example, police officers will drive riot-control vans would be in the same group with modular ambulance perators.

#### Using the Instructor Lesson Plans:

Before you conduct your first class, you will need to read the entire ILP, preferably several weeks before the course begins. A day or the record the course begins, you will again need to review the materials to make sure the preparation is complete. A secondary reason for this advance preparation is to entire to keep the course on schedule. You will be able to avoid lengthy discussions about materials that will be covered later; your preparation will let you know what topics at covered in the various units.

The first unit of Part I, A, is an introductory unit that has no specific knowledge objectives and consequently, no Review Exercises. This unit serves to acquaint trainees with the class schedule and the general course structure.

Units B through G and the Part II units are identical in format. Due to their length, most of the units are broken down into several "modules." These modules will provide you with a logical place to schedule breaks, lunch hours, etc. Each of these units consists of the following sections, arranged in the following order:

#### Description of Unit Page(s)

The first page(s) of every unit is a description of the unit content. A brief overview of the material covered is provided, as well as time estimates for each of the modules and the Review Exercises.

#### Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

This second section of each unit is a specific statement of the trainees' learning objectives for the unit. Pay particular attention when reading over these objectives; they provide you with guidance on which points to emphasize in your class presentation. Most of these objectives will be measured in the Review Exercises.

#### Instructor Preparation Activities

The third section, Instructor Preparation Activities, contains a listing of all activities you must accomplish prior to teaching a unit. For example, in Unit I-B it will be necessary for you to prepare a listing of your state statutes as they relate to emergency vehicle operation. The forms to list the statutes on have been provided with the instructor preparation pages. This section also contains a list of the equipment and materials needed for teaching the unit. When transparencies are required, they are identified by number.

The last item of information appearing on the preparation pages, Additional Resource Documents, is a listing of relevant document numbers, should you need to obtain additional information for a given unit. The document numbers refer to the documents listed in the Bibliography and References listing at the very back of your ILP.

#### Unit Content Pages

You will notice that most of the unit content pages have a two-column format. The left-hand column, INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES, contains three different kinds of information:

- 1. Text materials. This information is presented in outline form. This portion of the unit content is essentially the same as that in the TSG, except that in many cases the wording has been reduced to a "key-word sentence" form.
- 2. Instructor-based text materials. If you look at one of the unit content pages you will see that several points have a bullet (•) in front of them. These bullets cue you that this information does not appear in the TSG. It is important to present all of this material; in many cases



- the trainees will have printed questions in their guides that relate to this material.
- 3. Presentation guidelines. Some of the sentences in the left column are printed in italics. These are hints to help you with your presentation. In many cases they will lead you to ask or tell the trainees something. They suggest ways to keep the trainees actively involved. These guidelines are for your use, and should not be presented directly to the trainees.

The right column of the unit content pages is titled NOTES. This column has three purposes:

- 1. It shows you which page in the TSG the trainees should be looking at (e.g., TSG I-B-4).
- 2. It cues you as to when instructional aids are appropriate (e.g., chalkboard, transparencies\*).
- 3. It allows space for you to enter your own notes, either before or during your classroom presentation.

#### Review Exercises

A series of review questions is presented at the end of each unit except Unit A. These questions are based on the materials presented in that unit. After you have presented all of the materials in a given unit, you should allow time for the trainees to complete the Review Exercises. The trainees should be able to complete these questions without going back to their text. You may use these Review Exercises for grading purposes if you choose to do so. Whether or not you grade the exercises, it is a good idea to go over the correct answers with the class. The answers appear, with the Review Exercises, at the end of each unit in the ILP.

<sup>\*</sup>Masters for all transparencies are provided in Appendix 2 at the end of the Instructor Lesson Plans.



#### Description of Unit

This "unit serves to familiarize trainees with the general content and structure of the entire course.

#### Module 1 - 50-60 Minutes

- 1. INTRODUCTION. General Procedures. Description of agenda and location of facilities.
- 2. Trainee Prerequisites. Explanation of trainee prerequisites.
- 3. THE TRAINEE STUDY GUIDE. Format. Explanation of structure and instructions for using the TSG.
- 4. ORGANIZATION OF THE COURSE. Part I, Part II, Part III. Description of basic content and structure for each part.
- 5. DEFINITIONS. Brief explanation of the terms used throughout the course.
- 6. SCHEDULE. Presentation of schedule for the entire course.



I-A-2

#### Instructor Preparation Activities

#### Module 1

1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.

2. Preparation for I-A-3. Find out the location of eating, telephone, message board, parking, and toilet facilities in the location where the training will be conducted, and be prepared to present it to the class.

3. Preparation for I-A-8. Look over the Schedule carefully. If you find you will need to make changes to it, note them in your ILP so that you can present them to the trainees in class.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: None.



#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

#### INTRODUCTION

- -Welcome the trainees and pass out the Trainee Study Guides.
- -Tell the trainees your name.
- -Ask the trainees to introduce themselves.
- -Fxplain the purpose of the course to the trainees:
  - •To enable members of the various emergency services to become more competent in the operation of emergency vehicles.

#### General Procedures

The following general procedures will be followed on each training day:

- A. Attendance.
- B. Announcements.
- -Tell the trainees the arrangements for the following:
  - Break times.
  - Eating facilities.
  - •Toilet facilities.
  - Telephones
  - Message Board
  - •Student Parking

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 1 \* \* \*

TSG - I-A-1

CHALKBOARD

UNIT	INTRODUCTION	unit Page	I-A-4
, 1	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	
Trainee Pro	requisites TSG - I-	A-1	
A. Traine	es must be licensed drivers. $\searrow$		
class	ees are assumed to be qualified to operate the general of vehicle (e.g., sedan, van, truck) they will be operator their emergency service.		
	es must have completed the National Safety Council sive Training Course.		,
		ŧ	•
,		,	,
18 (			
, ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
<b>t</b>			· V
			,
		, A	



I-A-6

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-A-3

ORGANIZATION OF THE COURSE

Part 1 Basic

Use the Table of Contents to provide a brief overview of the unit coverage for Part I.

The units in Part I are general in nature; they are relevant to trainees from all of the emergency services: police, fire, ambulance, and rescue. They apply no matter what type of vehicle will be operated on the job.

#### Part II - Specialized

This course is designed to be presented by any emergency service. During Part II, the instructor should focus on only those materials appropriate to trainee needs for his or her emergency service.

The  $P_{art\ II}$  unit covers specific service- and mission-related knowledge.

#### Part [1] - In-Vehicle (Practical)

-Explain that for this part of the course, the trainees will be assigned to the type of vehicle they will operate upon course completion.

This third part of the course is devoted to practical, in-vehicle exercises for developing trainees' skill in operating an EV.

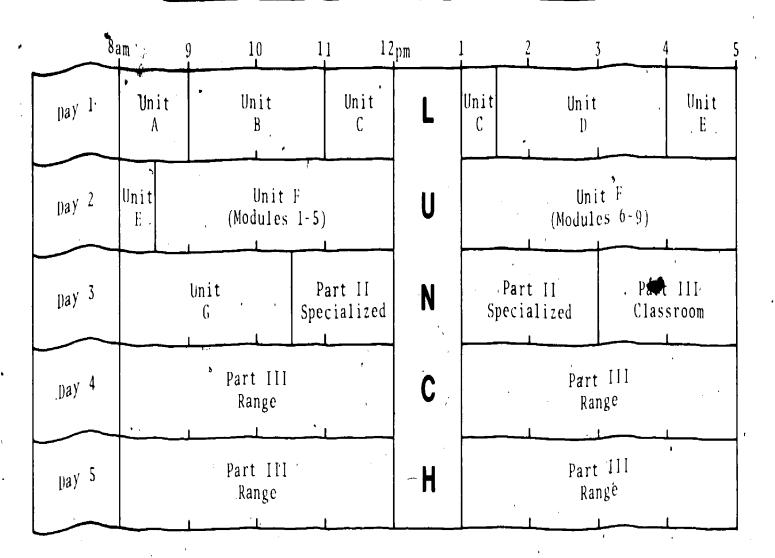
UNIT				
TILE	INTRODUCTION		UNIT	I-A-7
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
DEFINITIONS - Make sure	these definitions are clear to the trainees.	TSG - I-A-4		
Whenever on	ne of these terms appears in the training, it should be to mean the following:	<b>.</b>		
	th emergency warning devices (lights and sirens) acti- is on a mission involving a (possible) life-threatening on.		· · ·	
	cy Vehicle (EV): Any vehicle which is legally author- operate in the emergency mode. The vehicle is an cy vehicle whether or not it is operating in the emer- ode.			
D. Emergen	cy Vehicle Operator: A person who is authorized to n emergency vehicle in the emergency mode.  cy Service: Police and volunteer or salaried fire, and ambulance personnel.	A Control		
1	ations: In the text, illustrations of	CHALKBOARD		
2. An c	ordinary car look like this:			
1.				



#### SCHEDULE

If you will be making any changes to this schedule, have the trainees note these changes now.

#### Example Schedule for Emergency Vehicle Operation Training



NOTE: Times shown for each unit are estimates and include time for the Review Exercises. These time estimates need not be adhered to rigidly. The overall scheduling objective is to complete all classroom work, including the Part III classroom work, by the end of the third day.



#### Description of Unit

This unit deals with the legal aspects of emergency vehicle operation.

#### Module 1 - 40-50 Minutes

- 1. INTRODUCTION. An overview of the kinds of regulations governing emergency vehicle operation and the three basic principles of emergency vehicle operation.
- 2. STATE STATUTES ON EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATION. Presentation of the specific state statutes as well as local ordinances and departmental policy.
- 3. INTERPRETING THE LAW. What Is a True Emergency? Development of the concept of "true emergency" including a case history.

#### Module 2 - 30-40 Minutes

- 1. What Is Due Regard For The Safety of Others? Development of the concept of "due regard" including a case history.
- 2. SUMMARY. Brief review of the unit materials including Practice.

#### Review Exercises - 20 Minutes

Written review questions on material presented in the two modules of this unit. Time estimate allows for discussion and explanation after trainees have completed exercises.

#### Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

#### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of topical areas covered by state statutes, will be able to write a brief description of the statute as it relates to emergency vehicle operation.
- 2. Given descriptions of several situations, will be able to identify those situations that represent a true emergency and explain why.

#### Module 2

By the end of this module, the trainees:

1. Given descriptions of several situations, will be able to identify those situations that illustrate due regard for the safety of others and those that do not.



#### Instructor Preparation Activities

#### Module 1

- 1. Preparation for I-B-10. Prepare a listing of state statutes using the forms that follow these Instructor Preparation pages. Highlight important sections on emergency vehicle operation. In order to fill out the forms, you will have to obtain a copy of your state's formation are required. Look at the example provided with the forms to see what kinds of information are required. If your state statutes address any other topics that are not listed, use the blank space provided on the forms. Put the name of the state from which the statutes were taken in the blank at the top of the form. When you have completed the listing, make enough copies for all trainees.
- 2. Preparation for I-B-10. Obtain copies of any local ordinances and departmental policies that relate to the topics listed on the forms. This information should not be written on the forms given to the trainees. Instead, it should be presented during the discussion of the statutes, with trainees encouraged to take notes.
- 3. Preparation for I-B-11. Think up several examples of a "true emergency" and be prepared to present them during the class discussion of "true emergency." Newspaper clippings can be highlighted and discussed in detail.
- 4. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on these materials.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: Enough copies of state statutes, regulations, local ordinances, and policies for all trainees.

#### Module 2

45

1. Preparation for I-B-17. Create three situations using the example below, and note them on page I-B-17. Make the situations relevant to the trainees' experience level and emergency service.



#### Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

Each situation should illustrate two points: a true emergency situation (or lack of it), and due regard for the safety of others (or lack of it).

EXAMPLE: A police officer traveling 50 mph on an icy road to reach the scene of an automobile accident (with injuries). There is a police vehicle and an ambulance already at the scene. The police dispatcher fails to alert all units that assistance has arrived on scene.

2. Read over the entire module and be prepared to conduct a lecture on these materials.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: None

#### Review Exercises

Questions 1.a, 1.b, 1.c. The answers for these questions do not appear in your copy of the Review Exercises, because they are dependent on your state's statutes. Find the correct answers on the State Statutes Chart which you prepared for Module 1, and note them on your copy of the Review Exercises so that you can present them to the class when they have completed the Review Exercises.

#### Additional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference nos.: 7, 36, 37.

## RELEVANT STATE STATUTES\* Uniform Vehicle Code

Definition of Emergency Vehicle

Notes

Local Policy/Ordinances

Ch. 1, Sec. 1-104

Such fire department vehicles, police vehicles and ambulances as are publicly owned, and such other publicly or privately owned vehicles as are designated by the commissioner (or other appropriate state official).

proceeding past red lights and stop

Ch. 11, Sec. 11-106, (b) 2.

The driver of an authorized emergency vehicle may proceed past a red or stop signal or stop sign, but only after slowing down as may be necessary for safe operation.

Recognized warning devices Ch. 12, Sec. 12-218, (a).

Every authorized emergency vehicle shall, in addition to any other equipment and distinctive markings required by this act, be equipped with a siren exhaust whistle or bell capable of giving an audible signal.

\*36

ERIC 49

SOME LEGAL ASPECTS OF EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATION UNIT PAGE I-B-6 RELEVANT STATE STATUTES
Motor Vehicle Code, State of ion of Emerge covehicle Local Policy/Ordinances Notes ing past red lights and stop ed warning devices



RELEVANT STATE STATUTES
Motor Vehicle Code, State of
(Continued)

Violating traffic flow and turn regulations

Passing

Parking at the scene of an emergency

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

Ü

RELEVANT STATE STATUTES

Motor Vehicle Code, State of (Continued)

Exceeding posted speed limits

Definition of an emergency

UNIT PAGE

BEGIN MODULE 1 \* \* \*

I-B-9

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

#### **INTRODUCTION**

A. Three types of regulations to follow: (1) motor vehicle and traffic laws enacted by the state government, (2) local ordinances (e.g., local speed limits), and (3) departmental policy about what you as an EV operator may and may not do.

TSG - I-B-2

- B. Three principles of EV operation.
- -Emphasize these three points:
  - 1. EV operators subject to all traffic regulations unless a specific exemption is made.
    - •A specific exemption is a statement which appears in the statutes such as: "The driver of an authorized emergency vehicle may exceed the maximum speed limits so long as he does not endanger life or property."
  - 2. Exemptions are legal only in the emergency mode.
  - 3. Even with an exemption, operator can be found criminally or civilly liable if involved in an accident.

			P His	4 P
UNIT	SOME LEGAL ASPECTS OF EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-B-10
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
STATE STAT	TUTES ON EMERGENCY VENICLE OPERATION	TSG - I-B-3		
have prep plain lar	trainees with copies of the listing of state statutes you pared. Help the trainees translate the legal jargon into aguage. (Suggest notetaking). Provide clarification or explanation if needed.		<b>Y</b>	
-Provide a	any local ordinances or departmental policy relevant to		1	·
· ~				0
				), (1)
•				
*				
The state of the s			, <b>,</b>	
				*
			•	

7

#### SOME LEGAL ASPECAS OF EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATION

UNIT PAGE

I-B-11

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-B-4

INTERPRETING THE LAW

Actions will be judged by others (e.g., superiors, in court), from at least two aspects:

- A. True emergency?
- B. Due regard?

#### What is a True Emergency?

Exemptions legal only in true emergency situation. Definition of true emergency unclear.

- A. Sometimes operator does not have to decide for himself.
  - •The code system used will make the severity of the emergency clear.
  - •Information provided by and solicited from the dispatcher will make the nature of the emergency clear.
  - •The emergency service the operator is affiliated with will make the nature of the emergency clear.
- B. When operator must decide, the following definition should be considered:

A situation in which there is a high probability of death or serious injury to an individual, or significant property loss, and action by an EV operator may reduce the seriousness of the situation.

-Cite examples that illustrate this definition.

ERIC

ይሳ

UNIT	SOME LEGAL ASPECTS OF EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-B-12
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
Case Histor	c <u>y</u>	TSG - I-B-5		
-Allow the (Figure I- questions	trainees a few minutes to read over the case history -1) on the following page. Raise the following :	TSG - I-B-6		·
•Might the slowed to	results of this case been different if the officer had 20 mph?	·		
•Might the hands on t	results have been different if the officer had had both the steering wheel?			,
•Might the a more ser	results have been different if the little girl had had ious injury initially (e.g., uncontrolled bleeding)?		;	
-When discu	ssion is complete, summarize the case as follows:	•		
bably the dition did	of the factors might have caused the court to reach a decision. The most critical factor, however, was profact that the child was not seriously injured-her connot represent a "true emergency." The officer was negexercising the exemptions granted by the law.		<b>\$</b> ·	
				٠.,
,		, <del>U</del>		

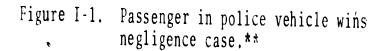
I-B-13

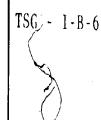
### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

In the case of <u>Wood v. Morris\*</u> a police officer was transporting a young girl with an injured arm to the hospital when he collided with another vehicle. The collision caused additional injury to the child. Although the police vehicle's siren and red light were in operation at the time of the collision, the court found him negligent, and an appellate court affirmed that finding as follows:

"The evidence showed that the defendant approached the intersection, which he knew to be one of the main traffic arteries of the city, at a speed of 45-50 mph; that he knew the speed limit at that place was 25 mph; that the street was wet with rain and was of asphalt construction, which he knew makes it even more slick; that he did not apply the brakes as he approached the intersection and only slowed the vehicle perhaps 5 mph before entering the intersection; that he was operating the vehicle with his left hand, while holding\*the siren with his right hand, being right-handed; that the plaintiff's injuries were not of a critically serious nature, being confined primarily to her arm, so that she was able to get into the automobile and talk. The above evidence was sufficient to authorize a finding of ordinary negligence on the part of the defendant policeman. . ."







65

\* \* END OF MODULE 1 \* \*

<sup>\*109</sup> Ga. App. 148, 135 S.E. 2nd 484, 487 (1964).

I-B-14

INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
What is Due Regard for the Safety of Others?	* * * BEGIN MODULE 2 * * *
Must be based on circumstances. Guidelines:	TSG - 1-B-7
A. "Enough" notice of approach, before collision is inevitable.	
•"Enough" is difficult to define. If motorists have windows up, heater or air conditioner and radio on, it may take them a long time to respond.	,
•Notice is given by using appropriate signaling equipment (i.e., lights and siren) in accordance with statutes.	
B. In judging due regard in use of signaling equipment, courts will consider:	٠,
1. Was it necessary to use it?	
2. Was it used?	
3. Was signal audible and/or visible to motorists and pedestrians?	

A Second Case History

-Allow the trainees a few minutes to read over Figure I-2 on the following page. Raise the following questions (page I-B-16):

Use of signaling equipment must be accompanied by caution.

A reasonably careful man, performing similar duties and under similar circumstances, would act in the same manner.

An accepted definition of due regard is:

TSG - I-B-8

TSG - I-B-9

Pittsburgh Press, Mon., Jan. 17, 1977

# 1,073% Property Tax Increase Periling Midwest Town

By JAMES J. FISHER

SALIX, Iowa — This town of 387 souls, 17 miles south of Sioux City, amid the rich bottomlands of the Missouri river, could be any of a thousand small towns in Middle America: a post office, a few stores, a feed mill, three bars, two schools and, of course, the tree-lined streets where residents, 53 per cent retired and on fixed incomes, live in scrubbed houses.

But Salix isn't one of those towns. It's unique, for today it sits on a precipice — one from which it will almost surely fall come March 15, when the new city budget is certified and the 137 real property taxpayers find their bills increased by an average of 1,073 per cent to pay off a six-year-old lawsuit against the town.

FOR ROGER HUOT, a corn farmer, that means his bill will go from \$400 to \$1,500; for Mrs. Edna Peppin, whose husband has been in poor health for eight years, the jump will be from \$200 to \$1,500, and for Rupert Thorpe, the postmaster, the bill will go from \$300 to nearly \$5,000.

Talk of money pervades this town. Not greedy talk, but talk of relief from the burden that most know is coming. There have been fanciful suggestions to burn the town to the ground, to move it to another townsite, or for the city council of six members to resign in protest.

And some talk isn't so functful. "We could solve all our problems if wo'd take every judge, lawyer and insurance agent in the county out and line them up and shoot them," says one farmer. He is dead serious.

Salix's problems began on the afternoon of Oct, 29, 1970, when the Salix volunteer ambulance, transporting a dying 80-year-old man to a Sioux City hospital, collided with a car in Sioux City.

The ambulance entered the intersection against the stoplight, with siren and red light on. The car, driven by Grant Wetz, an attorney who specialised in insurance, had the green. Wets was injured fatally in the accident.

Subsequently, his widow, Mrs. Frances Wetz, filed a \$200,000 suit against the town of Salix. Although it was a volunteer ambulance equad, court decisions concerning workman's

compensation have declared that even volunteers are employes of a city.

Salix had insurance — \$100,000 — with Western Casualty and Surety of Fort Scott, Kan.

"Western was convinced that the town didn't have a thing to worry about," says William Shuminsky, Salix attorney. "They wanted to go to court. In April 1972, the attorneys for Mrs. Wetz offered to settle for \$95,000.1 I wrote Western's attorneys and demanded that they come to terms. But no, they went to court."

JUDGE JAMES P. KELLEY heard the suit in mid-1972 without a jury. He ruled in July 1972, awarding the Wetz estate \$188,642, plus interest from the day of the accident. The decision was later affirmed by the Iowa Supreme Court. Western paid out its \$100,000, plus about \$15,000 in interest. That left salix holding the bag for the remainder. With interest, that came to \$118,551.03

The Iowa legislature responded to Salix's plight last year by passing a law allowing the town to pay the debt off in 10 yearly installments. That law was struck down as unconstittional by the

lowe courts on the grounds that it infringed on a judicial dashion.

Thus, this year, South ordered by the courts to budget the settlement into its city appropriations, meaning the town will spend \$129,000. The town budget is usually about \$11.040

Shuminsky has filed suit against Western in the amount of \$118,551.03, charging that the company acted in bad faith. There is little hope the suit can come to trial before the city budget is certified.

Postmaster Rupert Thorpe, who was driving the ambulance the day the accident occurred (but who never was charged with violation of any traffic laws), said the rescue squad still operates.

"We could have just quit, but that would have meant a lot of people would have died out on the interstate, in the towns around here or out on the farms," he says. "But people depend on us. That's why we go on."

And how much insurance does the rescue squad have?

"A million bucks," says Thorpe.

Figure I-2. Property Tax Increase Periling Midwest Town.

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-B-9

- •Did this situation appear to be a true emergency?
- •Did the operator exercise due regard for the safety of others?
- •Why do you think the court reached the decision it reached?
- -Summarize the ease:
- •The situation does appear to be a true emergency. The court probably came to its decision on the basis of lack of due regard for
  the safety of others.

Situation 3:

\* \* END OF MODULE 2 \* \*

### Review Exercises

- 1. For each of the topical areas listed below, write a brief description of the relevant points of your state statute.
  - a. Proceeding past red lights and stop signals:
  - b. Violating traffic flow and turn regulations:
  - c. Parking at the scene of an emergency:

- 2. From the information available, which of the following situations should be treated as a true emergency by an EV operator? Explain why.
  - a. Three-car collision, injuries (severity unknown). No other EVs at the scene.

True emergency (yes or no)? <u>Yes</u>

Why? Primarily because there are injuries. Because so little information is given

about the injuries or about any other circumstances (e.g., road blocked?) the

operator must assume a true emergency.



I-B-19

b.	The dispatcher neighborhood.	reports	that	a dog,	possibly rabid,	is	threatening	children	n	8 1	nearby
----	------------------------------	---------	------	--------	-----------------	----	-------------	----------	---	-----	--------

True emergency (yes or no)? Yes

Why? A rabid dog would represent a real threat to human life. Since there is no way to determine, for certain, whether or not the dog is rabid without the aid of a veterinarian, someone should arrive at the scene quickly to restrain the animal.

c. The dispatcher reports that a man phoned, requesting aid. He thinks his son may have broken his ankle; there is some pain and swelling.

True emergency (yes or no)? No

Why? Unless local policy dictates otherwise, a broken bone is generally not considered a threat to human life.

- 3. From the information available, which of the following situations seem to represent "due regard for the safety of others" and which do not? Why?
  - a. An EV operator, enroute to a true emergency, traveling 70 mph on an asphalt road in the rain (posted limit is 45 mph).

Due regard (yes or no)? <u>No</u>

Why? Road and weather conditions are poor; the EV is traveling 25 miles OVER the posted limit; loss of control is not only possible, but likely.

I-B-20

b. Proceeding through a red light, after slowing to 10 mph when returning to the station at the end of a run.

Due regard (yes or no)? No

Why? There is no indication of a true emergency. Under that circumstance, proceeding through a red light not only represents a lack of due regard, but it is illegal.

c. Traveling the wrong way down a one-way street, while enroute to a fire at a large apartment complex, using all signaling equipment.

Due regard (yes or no)? Yes

Why? A true emergency does exist. The EV operator is complying with the statute

(using signaling equipment) while violating normal direction of movement. Without more information to indicate why traveling the wrong way own this street might be unsafe, it would seem that the operator is exercising due regard.



I-C-1.

### Description of Unit

This unit covers the factors to be considered when selecting (or preplanning) routes, as well as the techniques and procedures for reporting emergency vehicle operation.

### Module 1 - 30 Minutes

- 1. SELECTING ROUTES.
- 2. Advantages of Preselection. Brief overview.
- 3. Factors to Consider. Presentation of factors to be considered in route planning, including: Location of Facilities, Events Affecting Traffic Flow, Characteristics of cal Roads—and Streets, and Road Conditions.
- 4. Summary. Includes review of advantages and Practice.

### Module 2 - 30 Minutes

- 1. REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS.
- 2. Introduction. Provides a general overview of techniques and procedures for both routine and mission-related communication.
- 3. Routine Communications. Provides specific\*techniques and procedures; includes Practice.
- 4. Mission-Related Communications. Provides specific techniques and procedures; includes Practice.

ERĬC



I-C-2

### Description of Unit (Continued)

### Review Exercises 1345 Minutes

Written review questions on material presented in the two modules of this unit. Time estimate allows for discussion and explanation after inees have completed exercises.

84

### Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

### Modul 1

·By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Will be able to state two advantages of careful route preselection.
- 2. Will be able to list three examples of the kinds of facilities whose location could be essential to route planning.

### Module 2

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of several statements relating to communications techniques and procedures will be able to identify which are correct.
- 2. Will be able to state the three items of information that must be obtained from the dispatcher before responding to an emergency call.

I-C-4

### Instructor Preparation Activities

### Module 1

UNIT

ATTLE

1. Presentation for I-C-10. Obtain a local map. Select a section of the map (about 8" x 10") that most trainees should be familiar with. Prepare a list of factors that would have to be taken into consideration when planning a route. Look at the example map that follows these Instructor Preparation pages to help you in preparing your own. When you have completed the map and list of conditions, make enough paper copies for all trainees. In addition, make a transparency of the map for use with the overhead projector, to facilitate class discussion.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk; overhead projector.

Materials: Enough copies of prepared map for all trainees; transparency No. 1.

### Module 2

- 1. Presentation for 1-C-11. If communications codes are used in the area where the trainees will be working, obtain any materials you will need to teach them to the trainees.
- 2. Presentation for I-C-14. If priority codes are used in the area where the trainees will be working, obtain any materials you will need to teach them to the trainees.
- Presentation for I-C-14, Prepare three descriptions of emergency situations for "transmission" to trainees. Use local codes, if appropriate. Only the dispatcher's initial transmission need be prepared. In the initial transmission, leave out some critical information to allow the trainees an opportunity to solicit it. Focus these transmissions on the three items of information that should be obtained for any emergency. You may write these on page I-C-15, in the space provided.

I-C-5



### Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Naterials: None.

### Review Exercises

Question 3.a. No answer appears beside this question, because the answer is largely dependent on local policy. Find out the answer to the question so that you can give the trainees the correct answer after they have completed the Review Exercises.

### Additional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference no.:



- Conduct an emergency run from the North Allegheny
   School (A) to St. Johns General Hospital (B).
   The conditions are as follows:
  - a. The entrance to the high school is on McKnight Road.

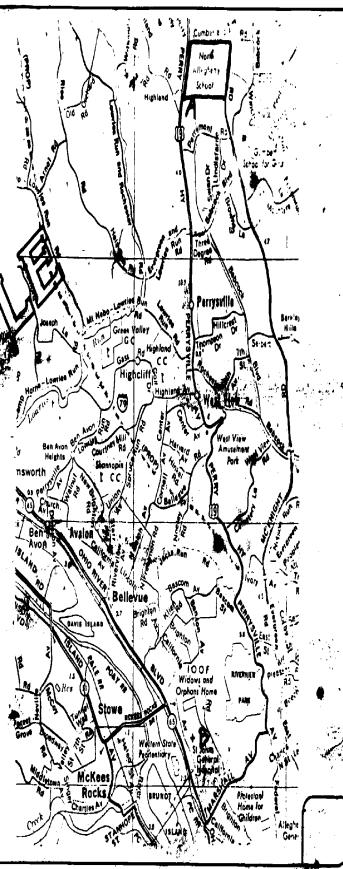
b. The entrance to the hospital is on California
Avenue.

c. Perrysville Avenue (Rt. 19) is closed in the vicinity of Riverview Park.

d. McKnight Road is a heavily-traveled oac, with several shopping centers.

e., It is 4:30 pm.

EXAMPLE MAP AND LIST OF POSSIBLE CONDITIONS.



UNIT PAGE

I-C-7

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

\*\* BEGIN MODULE

### SELECTING ROUTES

-Allow a couple of minutes for trainges to read over the Advantages.

TSG - I-C-2

### Advantages of Preselection

- டிA. Travel time cut to minimum.
  - B. Minimizes amount of "accident exposure."
  - C. Driver can devote full attention to driving.

### Factors to be Considered

Four factors:

- A. Location of Facilities (and their entrances and exits).
- -Have trainees assist in developing the list of facilities. Make sure that at least the following are included:
  - •Schools
  - •Factories
  - •Shoping centers
  - ·Large apartment complexes.
  - ·High-density work are dustrial parks, downtown work areas)
  - •Hospitals
  - •Churches

CHALKBOARD

ERIC \*\*

\*Full Text Provided by ERIC\*\*

STRUCTIONAL CONNENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES 4	
•Civic auditoriums, concerd halls, stadiums, etc.	TSG - I-C	- 2	
Events Affecting Traffic Flow.	CHALKBOARI		
ve trainees assist in developing the list of events. Make su at at least the following are included:	ire	**************************************	
•Beginning and end of normal work day.	1 1		•
•Shift-change times for large factories, laspitals, etc.		4	•
•Beginning and end of normal school day.		e.	•
•Special events. This category is not dictable as the others. An EV operator must make a special effort to keep informed of special events.			· .
k the trainees to think of some ways to keep informed of ecial events. Make sure that at least the following are cluded:	CHALKBOARI	· · · · · ·	r
•Departmental bulletins.		,	i
•Newspaper, other media.	,	•	
•School calendars.		•	
Characteristics of Local Roads and Streets.	TSG - I-C-	3	
1. Maps are essential to "new" EV operators or those who have been transferred to a new location.		đ	2

found on detailed area maps. Make sure at least the following

are included: '

ERIC FULL PROVIDED LINE

UNIT TITLE	SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EM		RATIONS UNIT PAGE	1-C+9
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GL	IIDELINES	NOTES	1
· •	oad size (number of lanes).		TSG I-C-3	u
•L	imited-access roads.			; •
. • <u>L</u> ,	arge facilities (e.g., hospitals).	• • •	8	
	eful information not on maps can be ad			
	reas with a high incidence of accident ery steep grades.	S	7.3	
	oads or lanes on roads that change dir o the traffic flow or time of day.			
on maps	onditions. Operator must keep informes.  ed roads (potholes, badly rutted).	d; can be noted	CHALKBOARD	
•Detour	rs or closed roads.	**		<i>\</i>
•Roads bad we	or sections of roads that are difficuent the ather.	lt to travel in		<b>.</b>
•Accumu	lated water areas.			
•Speed	breakers (dips or bumps).			
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				, ,
97		1		»,

### SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS

UNIT PAGE

I-C-10

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-C-4

Summary

Advantages:

- A. Travel or transport time minimized.
- B. "Accident exposure" minimized.
- C. Driver can devote full attention to driving.

Practice

ERIC

- -Pass out copies of the map and list of conditions you prepared.
- -Use the projector to show the transparency you prepared earlier.
- Use the trainee's route selection as the basis for discussion.

  If there is disagreement about the chosen route, allow other trainees to present their viewpoints.
  - -Present these conclusions:
  - •In many case's there is no "single best route."
  - •The shortest route (in terms of miles) may not be the fastest route (in terms of time).
- Familiarity with the area is a trémendous advantage in selecting routes.

PRESENT TRANSPARENCY (Instructor prepared)

\* END OF MODULE 1 \* \*.

UNIT TITLE SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPER	ATIONS UNIT I-C-11
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS	* * * BEGIN MODULE 2 * * *
Introduction  Routine and mission-related communications.	TSG - 1-C-5
A. In-vehicle communications equipment to communicate with dispatcher.	
B. Standard codes (e.g., 10-codes) that speed up communications.	
-Ask the trainees to look at the example listing of communications codes (Figure I-3); the listing of 10-codes is meant as an example only.	TSG - I-C-6
-If it is necessary for you to teach the trainees any codes relevant to their service, this is the appropriate time to do so.	} 
C. General techniques for all communications:	TSG - I-C-5
•The goal of good communications techniques is to communicate all necessary information with minimal disruption of the driving tasks.	
1. Brief and concise.	,
2. Codes, if appropriate.	
3. Weigh urgency of communicating against difficulty of drivingdon't compromise safety.	

4. Drop mike into lap to avoid tangling.

5. Have partner conduct communications (if possible).

6. Finish communications before starting run (if possible).

,	1.5			
10-1	Signal Weak	10-24	Call () by I	h <del>one</del>
10-2	Signal Good	10-22	Disregard	
10-3	Stop Transmitting	10-23	Arrived at Scene	
10-4	Affirmative (OK)	10-24	Assignment Completed	l
10-5	Relay (To)	10-25	Report to (meet)	
10-6	Busy	10-26	Estimated Arrival Ti	ime
10-7	Out of Service	27	License/Permit Infor	rmation
10-8	In Service	A \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	Ownership Informatio	n
10-9	Say Again (Repeat)	10-29	Records Check	· <b>\</b>
10-10	Negative	10-30	Danger/Caution	
10-11	On Duty	10-31	Pick-Up	,
10-12	Stand By (Stop)	10-32	Units Needed (Spe	ecify)
10-13	Existing Conditions	10-33	Help Me Quick (Emerg	gency)
10-14	Message/Information	10-34	Time	
10-15	Message De <b>N col</b> d	10-35	-Reserved-	i,
10-16	Reply to Message	10-36	-Reserved-	ي. بار
. 10-17	Enroute	10-37	-Reserved-	* / <b>*</b>
10-18	Urgent (Quickly)	10 38	-Reserved-	
10-19	(In) Contact	10-39	-Reserved-	
10-20	Location	<b>6</b> • • •		

Figure I-3. Official List of Ten-Codes.\*

alan samu
I BUIT
UNIT
* TIT) C
TITLE

ERIC J

### SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS

UNIT PAGE

I-C-13

		<u> </u>		PAGE	1 (, 13
<del></del>	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESEN	NTATION GUIDELINES	NC NC	TES	
<u>R'ou</u>	utine Communications		TSG - I-C-7		
· A.	Operator must inform dispatcher bef	ore leaving the vehicle.		,	
	1. It provides protection for the	operator.			
	2. Saves timedispatcher will not tact.	waste time trying to con-			
Ъ.	Report arrival at destination. Pro-	vides opportunity to:	•		,
	1. Ask dispatcher to alert other of hospital, highway maintenance).	rganizations needed (e.g.,	:	•	
•	2. Receive information that might a nation.	alter route or next desti-		,	,
	3. Tell the dispatcher you will be	away from vehicle.			,
C. \	Report any major condition likely to gency service, or ones other EVs pro	cause disruption to emer- obably don't know about.	,		
Prác	octice.		,		,
- Des	escribe the conditions listed below to	the class.	TSG - J-C-8		
- Ask dit	k one of the trainees to explain why tion should be reported to the dispat	(or why not) that con-		9	÷
	•Broken traffic light at major inter	rsection.			,
	•Disabled vehicle blocking traffic.	,			
	•A new detour.	`			
	•Section of missing guard rail on fr	eeway.	•	•	

### SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS

UNIT PAGE

I-C. 14

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

### Mission-Related Communications

TSG - I-C-8

- A. The three items that must be obtained for every call:
  - 1. Description of emergency.
  - 2. Address (location) and other identifiers.
  - 3. Indication of priority.
- -If priority codes are used locally, this is the appropriate place to present them to the class. If trainees will be using priority codes and communications codes, make sure they have a clear understanding of the difference between the types of codes.
- B. Other information that might be obtained (depending on type of call):
  - Roadway blocked?
  - 2. Other EVs on the way or on scene?
  - 3. Ilazardous materials (e.g., gasoline spillage)?
    - Items 2 and 3 can have bearing on route planning and parking for any emergency.
    - •For example, if gasoline spillage were involved, it might be wise to approach from the direction that represented the least risk of danger.

### Practice

-Select a trainee and "transmit" one of the messages you prepared earlier. Allow the trainee to solicit additional information.





UNIT TITLE \*

## SELECTING ROUTES AND REPORTING EMERGENCY VEHICLE OPERATIONS

UNIT PAGE

I-C-15

	*			PAG		
INSTRU	CTIONAL CONTENT/PRE	SENTATION GUIDELIN	<u>s</u>	NOTES		
-Be sure to poin trainee forgot important.	t out any of the thre to obtain, and the re	TSG - I-C-8				
-Repeat for all	of the "transmissions	s" you prepared.	4			
Message 1:	,	,	. *			
					, ,	
Message 2:	,					
	•		. \			
Message 3:						
•			·	.3		
1						
· ·	·		t		-	
100	1			* * END OF MODUL	E 2 * * (1 3 3	

 $S_{ij} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \right) \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \right) =$ 

	Review Exercises	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		* *	
l.	List two advantages of careful route planning.	A Parkers	•
•	Travel time can be cut to a minimum.	. •	# 14 A
	Careful route planning minimizes the amount of "accident exposure."	·	, ,
	The driver can devote his full attention to the driving tasks.		
	The utivel can across his lair accounts to	* * *	
•	List three examples of the kinds of facilities whose location could be route planning.	essential	to •
	Schools High-density work areas Civic auditorium	s, concert	halls
	Factories Hospitals		
	Shopping centers Churches		
•	Indicate which of the following statements are true and ch are fals	e;	T.
	a. All communications with the dispatcher should be conducted using	T	<b>t</b>
	10-codes. 4	Loca	al Policy
	b. Communications should be completed before starting a run, if possible.	<u> </u>	· .
,	c. The EV operator should always inform the dispatcher if he will be leaving the vehicle.	<u> </u>	.,



d.	If a second crew	member is	present, l	he should conduct	communi-
	cations.	,	i i)	والمرابع المحام المرابع المحام المرابع	1 1

e. The microphone should always be placed on its clamp by the receiver as soon as communications are ended.

4. List the three items of information that must be obtained from the dispatcher before responding to any emergency call.

Description of emergency.

Address (location).

Indication of priority.

### Description of Unit

This unit provides the trainees with the knowledge necessary to prepare their EV before they drive. It describes, briefly, how a motor vehicle works. It also includes inspection procedures, a list of symptoms of malfunction, and a description of pre-start procedures for the operator. It concludes with a module providing practical experience in inspecting EVs and applying pre-start procedures.

### Module 1 - 50-60 Minutes

- 1. VEHICLE INSPECTION--THE OPERATOR'S RESPONSIBILITY, Introduction. A preference of the operator's responsibility re: inspection and maintenance.
- 2. Major Components of a Vehicle. Brief explanation of the work of the work of the needs of the target audience.

  Material can be expanded if instructor desires, to more specifically need the needs of the target audience.
- 3. The Physical and Visual Inspection. Explanation of how and when vehicle should be inspected; using a checklist (included in unit).
- 4. MAINTENANCE OF THE EMERGENCY VEHICLE. Provides general guidelines for having maintenance/repair performed; provides opportunity for instructor to accommodate specific departmental structure.
- Key Indicator Chart. Provides specific symptoms or "key indicators" of malfunctions.

  Also provides an opportunity for instructor to indicate exactly what trainees' responsibility for performing maintenance is.

### Module 2 - 30 Minutes.

1. PREPARING TO DRIVE. Includes General Procedures to Increase Driving Ease and Safety, Making Safety Checks and Adjustments, Start-up Procedures, and Precautions Before Moying.

### Description of Unit (Continued)

Module 3 - 60 Minutes (variable, according to class size)

1. PRACTICE IN INSPECTION, MAINTENANCE, AND PRE-START PROCEDURES. Instructor demonstration and trainee performance of inspection, maintenance, and pre-start procedures.

Review Exercises - 20 Minutes

Written review questions on material presented in Modules 1 and 2. Time estimate allows for discussion and explanation after trainees have completed exercises.



### Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of several statements relating to vehicle inspection and maintenance, will be able to identify those statements that are correct.
- 2. Given a list of vehicle components, will be able to list two indicators (symptoms) of problem/malfunction for each.

### Module 2

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Will know the criteria for proper adjustment of:
  - a. Seat position.
  - b. Head restraint.
  - c. Lap belt.
  - d. Shoulder harness.
  - e. All mirrors.

Trainees will demonstrate application of this knowledge in Module 3.

I-D-4

A,

### Trainees' Knowledge Obejctives (Continued)

#### <u>le 3</u>

he end of this module, the trainees:

Given a copy of the Inspection Checklist, will be able to perform a thorough inspection of a motor vehicle, and correctly identify any symptoms of malfunctions or items requiring repair.

Will be able to perform any minor maintenance required.

Will be able to demonstrate proper adjustment of:

- a. Seat position.
  - Head restraint.
    - Lap belt.
- d. Shoulder harness.
- . All mirrors.



### Instructor Preparation Activities

### Module 1

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for I-D-10. Determine whether or not the amount of information provided in Major Components of a Vehicle is suitable for your specific group. If you determine that trainees need more explanation, (based on specific job requirements) prepare a lecture using some of the documents on the reference list at the end of this section. You should use the chalkboard to illustrate the material.
- 3. Preparation for I-D-18. Find out exactly what the trainees' responsibilities for performing maintenance are. Be prepared to tell them exactly what kinds of maintenance they will be expected to perform.
- 4. Preparation for I-D-18. Find out exactly how the trainees go about scheduling or reporting the need for maintenance in their specific locale. Be prepared to explain in class.
- 5. Preparation for I-D-19. Read over the material on the Key Indicator Chart. Look at the example (completed) copy of this chart which follows these Instructor Preparation Activities, pages I-D-8 and I-D-9. Fill out the blank chart which begins on page I-D-20 so that it accurately reflects local or departmental policy. Be prepared to present the information in class, so that the trainees can fill out the blank charts in their Study Guide.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk, overhead projector.

Materials: Enough copies for all trainees of any local or departmental policies re: in-

### Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

### Module 2

1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to discuss each of the procedures in class.

2. Preparation for I-D-26. Be prepared to discuss pre-start and starting procedures used for the particular type(s) of EVs represented in your class. You may need to modify the process on pages I-D-26 and I-D-27 to conform to the specific procedures.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk, overhead projector.

Materials: Copies of EV operators manuals if pre-start or starting procedures differ significantly from those in the text. Transparency No. 3.

### Module 3

1. Preparation for I-D-28. Arrange to have several vehicles available for trainees' inspection. The exact number will be dependent upon class size, but a ratio of three trainees to one vehicle is suitable. It is not absolutely necessary that the trainees inspect the exact type of vehicle they will be operating on the job, but it is desirable.

Before class begins, inspect all of the vehicles thoroughly, noting any symptoms of malfunction or need for repair that the trainees should identify in their inspection. This will allow you to grade the trainees' Inspection Checklists if you choose to do so.

- 2. If the trainees are required to perform any minor maintenance or repair work on the job, be prepared to demonstrate the correct procedures.
- 3. Preparation for I-D-29. Check over EVs to be used for demonstration of pre-start procedures, be sure:



126

### Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

- a. Seat position can be adjusted and that seat locks into position.
- b. Mirrors are working Properly and will hold adjustment.
- c. Seat belts and shoulder harnesses are accessible, clean, and can be adjusted.

Equipment: Any tools or parts required to demonstrate maintenance or repair (if relevant). EVs (ideally, 1 EV per 3 trainees) in which pre-start procedures can be demonstrated and practiced.

Materials: Extra, blank copies of the Inspection Checklist. Copies of operator's manuals or valid manufacturer's descriptions of special starting procedures or other pre-start procedures relevant to the specific EV.

### Additional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference nos.: 50, 60.

ERÍC

	7 /60	-	
ITEN	KEY INDICATOR	UNSAFE FOR EMERGENCY OPERATION	OPERATOR MAINTENANCE
APPROACH VEHICLE			
Attitude			<b>.</b>
-Springs, torsion bars, tires	Vehicle Mets, sags to the side, slants.		_
Body	Death of other stage.		, , 🗖
	011 on quarter panel.		0
CIRCLE VEHICLE			U
Lights			t
-Emergency lights	Light does not go on; dirty lenses; cracked lenses;	_	_
-Head, parking, brake, back-up	lights noticeably dim.		ם ם
Tires		,	u,
-Tread -Sidewalls	Tread-wear indicator visible, uneven tread wear.	<b>a</b> 1	, D
-Pressure	breaks, cracks, bubbles.	Ī	
Wheels	Does not meet <u>vehicle manufacturer's</u> specifications.	•	۵
	Cracked, bent rim, loose lug nuts.		۵
Doors	Do not close squarely or totally.	0	
UNDER HOOD			
Fluid Levels		à	1
-Radiator	Fluid not visible in radiator.		_
-011 	More than one quart low.		۵
-Windshield washer -Hydraulic	Less than half full,		
-Battery	Below add mark. Water not visible in cells.		
-Power Steering	Below add mark.	,	D,
-Automatic Transmission	Below add mark		ü

KEY INDICATOR CHART

Figure I-6. Key Indicator Chart

Check for evidence of oil or other fluid leak.

Cracked; loose: depresses more than one inch at center; tight: glazed surface.

Cracked, loose connections.

Below add mark.

Engine Block

<u>Hoses</u>

<u>Belts</u>

Ō

ITEM	KEYENDICATOR	UNSAFE FOR EMERGENCY OPERATION	OPERATOR Maintenance
ENTER VEHICLE			
<u>Cleanliness</u>	Dirt or loose objects.		ם .
Seat Belt	Not bolted to floor; badly travel; the not adjust properly or poll out with		0
Gauge and Display Indicators			•
-Gas -Oil Pressure	Low (below 3/4)		0
-Alternator/ammeter	Charging Acessive of discharging; light on.	i	
-Brake -T <b>ampe</b> rature	Warning Salt on skid control unit malfunction.		0 0
-Air Pressure	Rarning Voltage into danger zone.  Does not indicate proper pressure.		ä
Turn Signals	Fast blinker; no blinker.	ם '	٥
<u>Windshield Wipers</u>	Do not make contact with windshield; do not clear windshield properly.	, 0	٥
Windshield Washers	Fluid does not come out; fluid does not come out with sufficient pressure; improperly aimed.		0
Communications Equipment	Cannot send or receive; channel drifts out.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
Mirrors	Missing; will not hold adjustment.		Ū.
Siren	Not audible.	, <b>s</b>	0
Seat Adjustment	Will not lock into place.	,	٥
PA System	Does not work; distorts.	0	0
Interior Lights	Do not light.	· o	0
Cleanliness of Windows			
Engine	Will not start; stalls.	, •	0
VEHICLE IN MOTION	•		
Steering	Wheel turns more than 1/8 turn without response; vehicle wanders; unusual noise; jerky on turn.	•	٥
Brakes	Grab; pull to left or right; spongey; squealing.		۵
Suspension	Unusual noise; too bouncy, not stable; noticeable vibration."	•	. 0
<u>Acceleration</u>	Rough, uneven, hesitates; cuts out.		0

, 11	TLE		PAGE	1-1	-10	i
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		OTES	,	·	_
VEH	ICLE INSPECTIONTHE OPERATOR'S RESPONSIBILITY	* * * BEGIN	MODULE	1 * *	*	
Int	roduction	TSG - I-D-3				
A.	Many accidents could be prevented by a five-minute physical and visual inspection.			•		
В.	Responsibility for the mechanical safety of the vehicle rests with the operator.		,			
-Te	ll the trainees what their responsibilities are:			,	,	
	•Inspect vehicle every day (preferably at the beginning of shift).					
	• Ensure that maintenance/repair will be performed.					}
	• Recheck the vehicle after maintenance.			,		
	•Determine if and when EV is unsafe (or potentially unsafe) for emergency operation.	The state of the s				
Majo	r Components of a Vehicle	;				
Basi oper	c understanding of how vehicle components work will help ator perform the inspection.	L'				
tra	r Vehicle Components Chart appears on the next page. Have the inees refer to their Vehicle Components Chart. Explain each tem of components to the trainees.	TSG - I-D-4, D	-D-5,	I - D - 6		
•						
				,		_
		I		- 1		- 1

### Vehicle Components

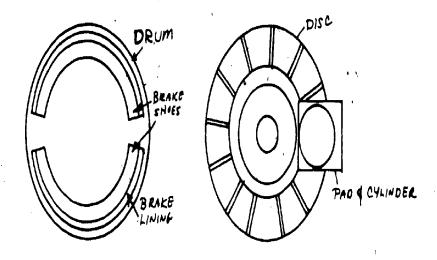
### **Braking System**

Drum Brakes

Pressure on brake pedal causes fluid or air to flow into brake cylinder. Cylinder moves brake shoe outward against brake drum (inner surface of metal wheel). This pressure of shoe against drum causes wheel to slow and stop.

Disc Brakes

A disc brake consists of a rotor and caliper assembly. The rotor is the disc. It is attached to the wheel axle. When the brake pedal is depressed, a hydraulic piston in the caliper causes the caliper to squeeze together, bringing a pair of brake shoes into contact with the rotor. The friction of the opposing brake pads as they squeeze the rotor slows the rotor rotation and causes the wheel to slow and stop.





## Vehicle Components (Continued)

## Engine (gasoline)

Carburetor Combustion Chambers Pistons Crankshaft Camshaft

Takes fuel in gas tank, mixes it with air in carburetor. Mixture is fed into combustion chamber where it is ignited by spark plugs. The exploding mixture causes pistons to move. The motion of the pistons causes the crankshaft to turn. The rotating crankshaft connects the final power from the engine to the transmission. The power is then carried to the driveshaft, the differential, the rear axles, and the rear wheels.

### Engine (diesel)

Combustion Chambers Pistons Crankshaft

High compression of air charge in cylinder creates great heat. Fuel charge is injected into cylinder and is ignited by hot air. The exploding mixture causes pistons to move. The motion of the pistons causes crankshaft to turn.

# Transmission and Drive-shaft

A system of gears which allows you to change the ratio of number of engine revolutions to number of wheel revolutions. For example, in low gear, the engine might turn 100 times for one wheel turn. In a higher gear, the engine might turn ten times for one wheel turn. The driveshaft connects the transmission to the rear wheels, making them turn.

### Clutch Pedal

When depressed, disconnects engine from transmission so you can change transmission gears:

## Steering Assembly.

Steering wheel and column connects to gears and linkage mechanism which changes direction of front wheels.

### Electrical System

Generator Alternator Battery Supplies power for primary and auxiliary functions.

I - D-13

#### Vehicle Components (Continued)

tions:

Power generation and storage (battery, generator/alternator, and

voltage regulator).

Power distribution (engine wiring).

Timing (distributor).

Spark generation (spark plugs and coil).

ary tions:

on

Inside/outside lighting (headlights, amber/red/blue signal or warning

lights, turn signals, instrument panel lights, etc.).

Air/heat circulation (heater, defroster, blowers).

Horn, siren, PA system.

Springs, shock absorbers, wheels, and tires which enable the driver to handle the vehicle properly on rough terrain and sharp curves, etc.



	PAGE
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
The Physical and Visual Inspection	TSG - I-D-7
A. Inspection uses a simple checklist; takes a few minutes.  Operator should:	
1. Inspect vehicle when engine is cold.	
•For accurate readings (e.g., tire pressure) and to avoid burns.	,
2. Inspect when interruptions are unlikely.	: :
-Ask the trainees to look at the Inspection Checklist, Figure I-4.	TSG - I-D-8
B. Checklist.	α
-Explain the purpose of the five "events."	
•Approach Vehicle. This event is visual, conducted while the operator is walking towards the vehicle. Purpose: Check vehicle attitude, body damage.	
•Circle Vehicle. Purpose: Check all exterior vehicle equipment.	:4
•Under Hood. Purpose: Check fluid levels, belts, hoses, etc. Visual check for leaks or seepage.	PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 2
-For further clarification of the under hood part of the inspection, discuss Figure I-5 (Transparency 2).	TSG - I-D-9
•Enter Vehicle. Purpose: Check all interior equipment including control switches, gauges, indicator lights, mirror, safety equipment, etc.	
· X	

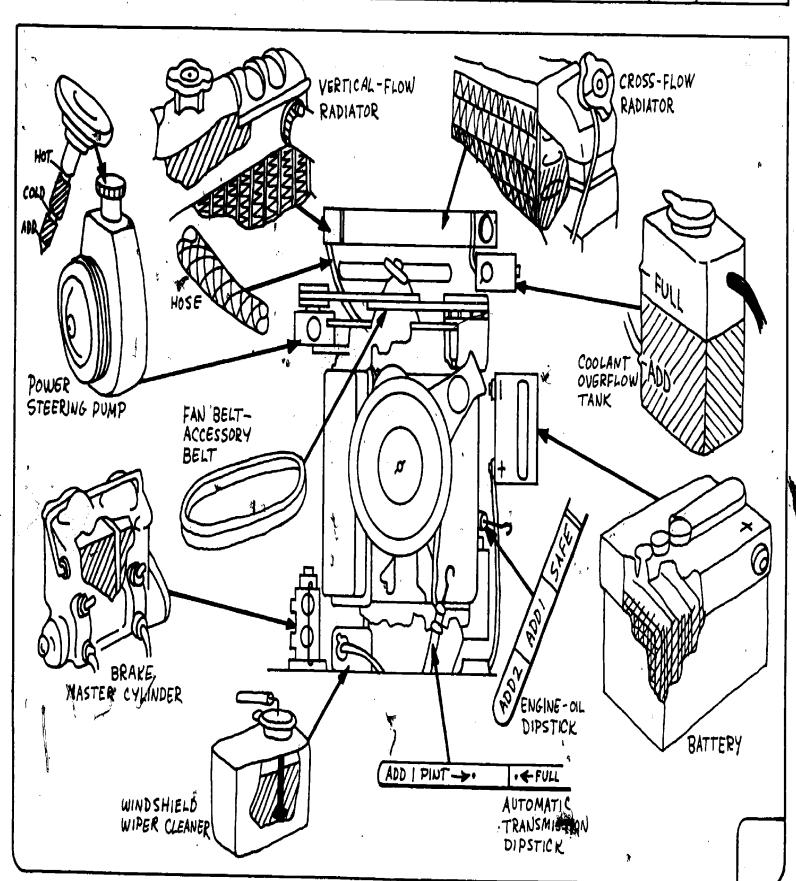
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		PAGE	<b>W</b> .
• <u>Vehicle</u> tions to brakes		<u> </u>	NOTES	la-
	e in Motion. Purpose: Check all equipment and functhat cannot be checked in a stationary vehicle (e.g., , steering).	TSG - I-D-8		***************************************
	į			
	*			
				<b>4</b> 
				í
<b>.</b>	,			

	EMERGENCY	VEHICLE	INSPE	ECTION CHECKLIST	•	
Name:		<u> </u>	Dat	e:	Time:	
Vehicle I	dentification No.:			Location:		
APPROACH VEHICLE	Vehicle Attitude Remarks:	ок ·			0 K	
CIRCLE VEHICLE	Headlights Running Lights Brake Lights Four-Way Flasher Tires Doors Remarks:			Beacon Flood Body Wheels Windshield		
UNDER HOOD Fluids:	Hoses *Radiator Windshield Battery Remarks:			Hydraulic Steering/Brake		
ENTER VEHICLE	Cleanliness Gas Gauge			Interior Lights Seat Belt Brake Indicator Air Pressure Turn Signals Communications Siren/Audibles PA System		
/EHICLE IN MOTION	Steering/Smoothness Unusual Noises Remarks:			Brakes Suspension		
Radiator m	ust be cool to avoid in				ction	

Figure I-4. Inspection Checklist.

I - D - 16





ERIC 113

Figure I-5. Engine Component's.

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

#### MAINTENANCE OF THE EMERGENCY VEHICLE

TSG - I-D-10

- A. Operator safety is dependent on vehicle condition. Well-maintained vehicles have fewer malfunctions, are easier to control. Part of the operator's job is to:
  - 1. Perform any required maintenance.
- -Operator responsibility in this area varies greatly, depending on locale, size of department, etc. As specifically as possible, tell the trainees what kinds of minor maintenance they are expected to perform themselves (if any).
  - 2. Schedule maintenance, or notify those responsible for scheduling maintenance.
  - 3. Recheck vehicle after maintenance/repair has been performed to verify correction.
- -Explain the <u>specific</u> departmental structure for having maintenance performed in the trainees' locality. Copies of any departmental forms regarding maintenance and/or inspection can be presented at this time.
- B. No matter who performs maintenance, it is the operator's responsibility to see that it is performed. Three ways to do this:
  - •Operator schedules maintenance, verifies upon completion.
  - •Operator reports problem to those responsible for scheduling maintenance, and verifies upon completion of maintenance.
  - •Operator performs maintenance himself.





UNI	٢.
TITL	E

# BEFORE YOU DRIVE

UNIT PAGE

I-D-19

		PAGE	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	İ	VOTES	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Key Indicator Chart	TSG - I-D-10		
-The Key Indicator Chart, Figure I-6, begins on the following page. Ask the trainees to turn to their copy of the chart and follow along as you explain what the column headings mean. Keep in mind that the trainees' chart does not have the last two columns filled in.	TSG - I-D-11		
Column headings:			l.
A. "Items." Items correspond directly with the listing on the Inspection Checklist.			,
B. "Key Indicators." Descriptions or indications of conditions that require corrective maintenance.		r	
C. "Unsafe for Emergency Operation." Malfunction of items checked in this column could make a vehicle unsafe for emergency operation.	,	¢	
D. "Operator Maintenance." Items checked under this heading are those that, according to local or departmental policy, should be corrected by the operator himself.	9.46		•· 1
-Go over each key indicator for the trainees. Tell the trainees that as you do so, you will tell them which items should be checked in the last two columns.			ı
			,
	,		

UNIT PAGE

I-D-20

# KEY INDICATOR CHART

ITEM	KEY INDICATOR	UNSAFE FOR EMERGENCY OPERATION	OPERATOR MAINTENANCE
APPROACH VEHICLE  Attitude -Springs, torsion bars, tires	Wahida a linka ann an an air	_	
<u>Body</u>	Vehicle lists, sags to one side, slants.  Dents or other damage.  Oil on quarter panel.	* 0	_ _ _
CIRCLE VEHICLE  Lights -Emergency lights -Head, parking, brake, back-up	Light does not go on; dirty lenses; cracked lenses;	0	0.0
Tires -Tread -Sidewalls -Pressure	Tread-wear indicator visible, uneven tread wear. Breaks, cracks, bubbles. Does not meet <u>vehicle manufacturer's</u> specifications.		ه ه ه
<u>Wheels</u> <u>Doors</u>	Cracked, bent rim, loose lug nuts.  Do not close squarely or totally.		0
UNDER HOOD  Fluid Levels -Radiator -Oil -Windshield washer -Hydraulic -Battery -Power Steering -Automatic Transmission  Engine Block Hoses Belts	Fluid not visible in radiator.  More than one quart low. Less than half full. Below add mark. Water not visible in cells. Below add mark. Below add mark. Check for evidence of oil or other fluid leak.  Cracked, loose connections.	,	ا و ا
<u>verts</u>	Cracked; loose: depresses more than one inch at center; tight: glazed surface.		0

Figure I-6. Key Indicator Chart



ITEM	KEY INDICATOR	UNSAFE FOR	OPERATOR	]
ENTER VEHICLE		EMERGENCY OPERATIL	MAINTENANCE	1
<u>Cleanliness</u>	Dirt or loose objects.			.
Seat Belt	Not bolted to floor; badly frayed; will not adjust properly or pull out fully.	ח		
Gauge and Display Indica -Gas -Oil Pressure -Alternator/ammeter -Brake -Temperature -Air Pressure			000000	
Turn Signals	Fast blinker; no blinker.			2
Windshield Washers  Communications Equipment Mirrors Siren Seat Adjustment PA System Interior Lights Cleanliness of Wandows Engine	Missing; will not hold adjustment.  Not audible.  Hill not lock into place.  Does not work; distorts.  Do not light.			7
VEHICLE IN MOTION Steering  Brakes Suspension Acceleration	Wheel turns more than 1/8 turn without response; vehicle wanders; unusual noise; jerky on turn, Grab; pull to left or right; spongey; squealing. Unusual noise; too bouncy, not stable; noticeable vibration. Rough, uneven, hesitates; cuts out.			

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION QUIDELINES

NOTES

PREPARING TO DRIVE

General Procedures to Increase Driving Ease and Safety

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 2 \* \* \*

TSG - I-D-13

- A. Safety checks and adjustments.
- B. Appropriate starting procedures.
- C. Precautions before moving.

# Making Safety Checks and Adjustments

- A. Safety belts and shoulder harnesses.
  - 1. Why wear them?
    - a. Restraints reduce the likelihood of serious injury or death.
      - •Nine to twelve thousand lives could be saved every year if all drivers conscientiously buckled up.
      - •Occupants who are thrown from vehicles during collisions have an extremely high fatality rate. Occupants wearing restraints are almost never thrown from the vehicle.
    - b. Restraints improve operator's ability to control the vehicle.
- -Ask the trainees how properly adjusted restraints can improve vehicle control. Lead them to the following conclusions:
  - •Restraints keep the driver in position during sharp turns, etc.

152



# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

- •Restraints will keep the driver from being thrown from the vehicle in the event of a collision.
- TSG I-D-13

- 2. Proper adjustment for occupant restraints:
  - a. Lap belt: snug across lower pelvis--not across stomach.
  - b. Shoulder harness: loose enough that a fist can fit between harness and chest.
- B. Head restraints.
  - 1. Why use them?
    - a. Help prevent neck and spinal injuries.
    - b. Help the operator stay in position in a collision.
  - 2. Proper adjustment for head restraints: center of restraint positioned at the back of the skull--NOT at the base of the neck where it could serve as a fulcrum and snap the neck if the vehicle is struck from the rear.
    - •If the head restraint is too low, the neck could be broken (when head snaps back) if force of impact is great.

TS6 - I-D-14





INSTRUCTIONAL	CONTENT/PR	RESENTATION	<b>GUIDELINES</b>
---------------	------------	-------------	-------------------

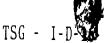
NOTES

- C. Seat position--when properly adjusted:
  - 1. Brake and accelerator can be applied without fully extending the leg.
  - 2. Steering wheel can be held with only a slight bend at the elbows.
  - 3. The seat is fully locked into position.
    - •A seat that slips out of position due to faulty mechanism or faulty adjustment can cause the operator to lose control.
- D. Mirrors. The drawing on the next page illustrates the following points:
  - Proper adjustment:
    - a. Inside, rear-view mirror:
      - 1) Entire rear window visible with head in normal driving position.
      - 2) Vehicle directly behind EV should be centered in mirror.
    - b. Outside, side-view mirror:
      - 1) Edge of EV's rear fender and side lanes visible.
      - 2) Before a passing vehicle's image leaves rear-view mirror, it would be visible in side-view mirror.

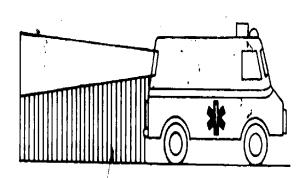
TSG - I-D-14

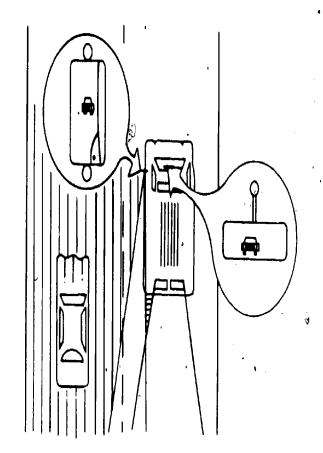


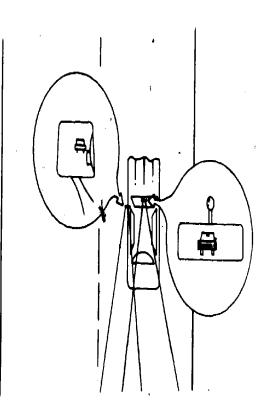
TSG - I-D-15 PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 3











Brind Spot

eric 155

160

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-D-16

- 2. Blind spots.
  - •In all vehicles the most dangerous blind spots are by the rear quarter panels.
  - •In larger vehicles (yans and trucks) there are generally blind spots below the rear window.

### Start-up Procedures

- -If trainees will all be driving the same type of EV on the job, go over the starting procedures according to the operator's manual.
- -If trainees will be driving more than one type of vehicle, use the start-up procedures A-F below. Explain to the trainees that there may be minor differences between these procedures and the specific ones for their particular vehicle-they should check the operator's manual once on the job.
- A. Transmission in "neutral" ("park" on automatic transmissions).
- B. Depress clutch if manual transmission.
  - •This facilitates turning engine over on cold days and keeps the vehicle from lurching forward if not in "neutral."
- C. Start engine per manufacturer's recommendations for setting choke/starting aids on hot or cold engine.
- D. If engine sputters, or won't start right away, avoid reengaging starter until engine is completely stopped.
- For diesels and heavy gasoline engines, a variety of starting aids exist. If many trainees will be operating such vehicles, use operator's manual to explain uses and procedures.



# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

E. Once engine starts, check:

TSG - I-D-17

- •Charging system.
- •0il pressure.
- •Dash indicator lights (out in five seconds?).
- Gauges (stabilized in satisfactory range?).
- F. Release parking brake before attempting to move vehicle.

# Precautions Before Moving

- A. Standard, audible signal from last crew member to ensure all are aboard.
- B. Only one other person (besides operator) in front seat or control cab.
- C. Station doors opened, no obstacles in vehicle's path.
- If station doors are set on timers, trainees should find out what the timing intervals are. Point out the dangers of timed doors.

				•					
UNIT	BEFORE YOU	RIVE		, ,				INIT AGE	Í-D-28
	INSTRUCTIONAL CON	ITENT/PRESENT/	ATION GUIDELI	<b>LES</b>	35 T / A	Ad O A	NO	TES	<b>)</b>
	IN INSPECTION, MAI	` <b>≥</b> -7%		ROCEDURI s'	S /	<b>,</b>	BEGIN M	ODULE	3 * * *
1	nee performance of			- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		امر امر			
C. Inst	cructor demonstration	n of maintenan	ce/repair p	rocedure	es (if		, d		
D. Trai rele	nee performance of a	naintenance/re	pair proced	ures (if	Ē.		•		
E. Inst	ructor demonstration	ı of pre-start	procedures	•	٧				
F. Trai	nee performance of ]	pre-start proc	edures.						
						,			
4		•						***	
u	•								
		Ţ				,		G.	
	3		,		<b>, %</b>	1			•
		e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e							
	<u>;</u>	•						•	•
					,	,			

# Guidelines, For Demonstrating Inspection, Maintenance, and Pre-Start Procedures

### A. Inspection.

- 1. Use the Inspection Checklist and go over every item.
- 2. For every item, point out the key indicators whether or not they represent a problem on that particular vehicle.
- 3. Keep the trainees directly involved in the demonstration. Some ways to do this are:
  - a. For any given item, ask the trainees what the key indicators are.
  - b. Ask the trainees to make judgments about the key indicators (e.g., tread depth).
- B. Maintenance. Any maintenance activity likely to be performed by an emergency vehicle operator can be proceduralized (e.g. changing a tire). Before demonstrating, you should have the procedure in mind (preferably written down) and broken into logical steps. Be particularly sure to point out any safety precautions (e.g., placing chocks before changing a tire).
- C. Preparing to Drive. Using the criteria outlined in this unit, demonstrate the proper adjustment of the following:
  - 1. Seat position (trainees have not done it properly unless seat is <u>locked</u> into position).
  - 2. Head restraint (center of skull).
  - 3. Lap belt (snug across lower pelvis--NOT stomach).
  - 4. Shoulder harness (fist between harness and chest?).
  - 5. All mirrors (per pictures in text and specific vehicle requirements).

1.0

\* \* END OF MODULE 3 \* \*

		Review Exercises		1
	Ans	wer the following true/false questions:	T	F
	1.	You should inspect your vehicle once a week, at the end of a shift.		<u> </u>
	2.	Loose objects such as paper cups, newspapers, flashlights, etc. should be removed from the passenger compartment or secured.	<u> </u>	
	3.	Springs and shock absorbers are part of the suspension system.	<u> </u>	
1	4.	If the gas gauge indicates below 3/4 full, it is a good idea to have the tank filled.	<u> </u>	**********
	5.	If you are working a daylight shift, it is not necessary to have a vehicle with a burned-out headlamp serviced.		, <u>X</u>
	6.	When a vehicle tends to wander due to steering problems, it is safe for emergency operation.	,	<u> </u>
	7.	A tire with a bubble by the rim does not have to be replaced as long as the tread-wear indicator is not showing.		<u> </u>
	8.	If your lights are dim, the vehicle is safe for emergency operation.	<del></del>	<u> </u>
	9.	If the vehicle swerves when you apply the brakes, it could mean that the wheels are not braking evenly.	X	

- 10. List two key indicators of problem/malfunction for each of the following items:
  - a. Tires
    - -Tread-wear indicator visible
    - -Uneven tread wear
    - -Breaks, cracks, bubbles in sidewalls
    - -Pressure does not meet manufacturer's specifications
  - b. Steering
    - -Wheel turns more than 1/8 turn without response
    - -Vehicle wanders
    - -Unusual noises
    - -Jerky on wheel turn
  - c. Belts
    - -Cracked, frayed
    - -Loose, depresses more than one inch at center
    - -Tight, glazed surface, frayed
  - d. Seat belt
    - -Not bolted to floor
    - -Badly frayed
    - -Will not hold adjustment
    - -Will not pull out fully
  - e. Brakes
    - -Grab
    - -Pull to one side
    - -Spongy
    - -Squeal, scream

I-E-1

## Description of Unit

This unit contains one module which presents knowledge about the physical forces that influence vehicle control.

#### Module 1 - 60 Minutes

- 1. INTRODUCTION. A brief overview of unit content.
- 2. MAJOR PHYSICAL FORCES. Physical forces covered here include friction, inertia and momentum, and centrifugal force as they relate to vehicle handling.
- 3. WEIGHT TRANSFER. The concept of "weight transfer" as it relates to speed and directional content is presented in this section.

#### Review Exercises - 20 Minutes

Written review questions on materials presented in this unit. Time estimate allows for discussion and explanation after trainees have completed the exercises.



# Trainees Knowledge Objectives



### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees

- 1. Will be able to write a brief description of ollowing terms:
  - a. Velocity
  - b. Centrifugal force.
  - c. Inertia
  - d.: Friction
- 2. Will be able to indicate on a drawing the effects of acceleration, deceleration, and turning on a vehicle's weight distribution.
- 3. Will be able to state the primary cause of brake fade.

## Instructor Preparation Activities

### Module'

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to lead a class discussion based on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for I-E-8. Look over the description of brake fade for drum and disc brakes. If you can find out what kind of vehicles the trainees will drive on the job, relate the discussion to their particular vehicles.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

Materials: Transparency Nos. 4 and 5.

# Additional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference nos.: 1, 8, 15.

I-E-4

# INSTRUCTION INTERIOR GUIDELINES

#### **NOTES**

#### INTRODUCTION

- A. While driving, operator can control velocity and direction only.
  - 1.. Velocity control is control of the EV's rate of motion or speed.
    - •Acceleration, deceleration, braking.
  - 2. Directional control is the control of the direction the EV will travel.
    - •Steering, turning, "tracking" curves in the road.
- B. Several physical forces influence the amount of control the operator has. If the limits created by the physical force are not exceeded, the operator can fully control both the EV's velocity and direction. If they are exceeded, control will be lost.

Have the trainees think of examples where the operator could exceed their limits and lose control.

- Driving too fast for weather, road, or tire conditions.
  - \*Accelerating too hard.
  - ·Braking inappropriately.
  - •Changing direction too abruptly. 🞉
  - Pracking a curve at too high a speed
- C. The key for EV operators is to know the conditions under which these limits are reached and, thus, when ability to control the vehicle will be lost.

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 1

TSG - I-E-2

UN	П
Ti	LE

# IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV/CONTROL

UNIT PAGE

I-E-5

17115			PAGE
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINE	5	NOTES
MAJOR PHY	SICAL FORCES	TSG - 3	
	important physical forces for EV control are and inertia, and centrifugal force.	friction,	
	, Fj.	•	
Friction	**************************************		·
A. What	is friction?		
1. F	riction is the resistance to slipping.		
2. F	riction occurs whenever two surfaces "rub" to	gether.	. <b>.</b>
B. Frict:	ion occurs throughout the EV.	e.	3°
-Have tra	inees think of examples.	CHALKBOARI	)
•Opera	ater's hands and the steering wheel.	0	
•Engi	ne parts rubbing together.		• •
•Gear	s meshing.		
•Tire	s and the road surface.		
• Brake	e shoes or ads rubbing on drum or disc.		
	t that with it friction, vehicle control woul		
	. Friction enables the EV to stop, accelerativection.	e, and	
	ehicle control, the most important areas of f	riction , The state of the stat	٧
are: 1. Be	etween tires and road.		

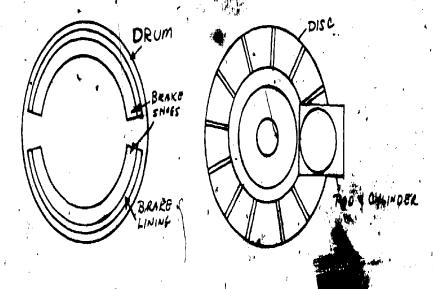
fluid.

`I-E-8

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT RESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - 5



PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 4a

- Drum brakes—almost 90 percent he total drum surface is in contact with the brake shoe at one time. Thus, only about 10 percent of the surface can be cooking off at one time. The brake drums can heat up and expand to the single where it is impossible for the shoes to be good contact with the drums.
- Disc brakes--since the pad makes contact with only about 15 percent of the disc surface, about 85 percent of the disc surface is cooling. Disc brake design permits much more cooling. Even if the disc were to get hot, it usually expands and makes better contact with the disc pads.
  - •The biggest cause of brake fade in disc brakes is worn pads which allow heat to transfer to the hydraulic fluid. Disc pads that are 50 percent worn have a 300 percent greater chance of causing fade.

IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL &	,	UNIT	I - E - 9.
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	. •	PAGE	
•In extreme cases, the heat can cause the disc to warp, leading to uneven braking.	TSG - 5		4
ity control and friction.			¥
ccelerating.	. 1		•
Spinning the wheels reduces friction. Acceleration is slowed.			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
. Spinning the wheels smooths the tires. The friction between the tires and road surface will be less in the future.	TSG - 6		
raking.		\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	•
Shortest stopping distance is achieved by braking so that wheels do not lock up and skid.		***	
•Best braking point is just short of locking the wheels.			ر و د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د د
•Difficult to hit exactly that point. •May have to pump or jab the brakes.			)
Locking the wheels. One of the reasons locked wheels have less friction than rolling wheels is illustrated on the following page.	ì		
	1	•	•
		\$	
192		3	193

LICKED  WHEFL  LICKED  WHEFL  LICKED  WHEFL  RAND  RAND  SUFFREE  Little beads of rubber come off the locked, skidding tires and act as ball bearings for the vehicle to slide on.  ging direction and friction.  Friction between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Tires must be rolling to change the EV's direction.  If brakes lock the front wheels, turning the steering wheel will have no impact on the direction the EV travels.  Directional control is possible only after brakes are let	IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL		UNIT PAGE	I-E-10
LOCKED  WHEEL  LITTLE beads of rubber come off the locked, skidding tires and act as ball bearings for the vehicle to slide on.  Ging direction and friction.  Girlicion between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Girlicion between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Girlicion between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Girlicion between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Girlicion between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		IOTĘS	
TSG - 7  Friction between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Fires must be rolling to change the EV's direction.  If brakes lock the front wheels, turning the steering wheel will have no impact on the direction the EV travels.  Directional control is possible only after brakes are let	Little beads of rubber come off the locked, skidding tires and act as ball bearings for	TSG - 6		4b.
Friction between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Fires must be rolling to change the EV's direction.  If brakes lock the front wheels, turning the steering wheel will have no impact on the direction the EV travels.  Directional control is possible only after brakes are let		moo t		
Directional control is possible only after brakes are let off and the front wheels begin to roll again.	Friction between the tires and road surface is required, if the operator is to control the EV's direction.  Tires must be rolling to change the EV's direction.  If brakes lock the front wheels, turning the steering	156 - /		
	Directional control is possible only <u>after</u> brakes are let off and the front wheels begin to roll <u>again</u> .			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
				+ 105



	<u> </u>	•	1.
IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL		UNIT PAGE	I-E-11
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
ize that directional control is impossible the front are locked. This applies on any road surface, but ses may have noted it on icy roads.	TSG - 7		
m and İnértia			,
entum is the product of a vehicle's mass (weight) times its ocity (speed).			
rtia is the force that makes a moving EV tend to stay in ion in the same direction.			•
momentum increases, it is harder to overcome the effects of rtia.		<b>.</b>	•
n how larger (heavier) EVs, having greater mass, will have r momentum at a given speed. Ask the trainees what this in terms of velocity and directional control.		v V	
entum and inertia affect vélocity control.  th increased momentum, stopping distance increases.	5	; <del>-</del> .	
th increased momentum, brakes must work harder, friction d heat must increase.		<del>क</del> ा क	*
entum and inertia affect directional control.		٠.	
th increased momentum, inertia will be harder to overcome.			. ) 
momentum increases, the track the EV will follow must be der.  ourved road on the chalkboard. Illustrate the way the must widen as speed increases.	CHALKBOARI	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3
6	( , , , , , ,	<u> </u>	

ERIC CALLED TO STATE OF THE STA

IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL UNIT I-E-12 **PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES NOTES fugal Force TSG - I-E-8 ntrifugal force is the force that tends to push a vehicle aveling around a curve away from the center of the turning lius. he child twirling a bucket full of water around his head llustrates this force: The water stays in the bucket. PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 5a EV THIS WAY ivers can feel the centrifugal force when the vehicle netiates a curve. It is a "push" from the inside of the rve, outward. e trainees what other physical force makes the vehicle tend straight as in the illustration above. r: inertia.) trifugal force is influenced by both speed and the radius the curve.

Higher speed, greater centrifugal force.

	ANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL	UNIT PAGE I-E-13
INSTRUCTION	AL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
Centrifugal For example: 500-foot rad	Force increases four-fold as speed doubles.  given a 3,000-pound vehicle entering a .us curve:	,
•A 0 mph, o	entrifugal force equals 350 pounds.	
•At 60 mph, o	entrifugal force equals 1,400 pounds.	
ighter curve,	greater centrifugal force.	
500-foot curve control will 50 mph.	s radius is decreased, the centrifugal force eed is greater and greater. Thus, the above e can be traveled at more than 60 mph. But be lost in a 250-foot curve at less than  force helps overcome centrifugal force. Also, gravity.	
· ·	Also, gravity.)	
		207

IMPORTANT F	PHYSICAL FORCES	AND EV CONTR	OL.		UNIT PAGE	Î - E - 14
INSTRUCTIONAL CO	ONTENT / PRESENT	ration guidelin	ES		NOTES	
TRANSFER			:	TSG - 1-E-9	f	
tion	•			,	,	
ery time an EV accel on, the weight distr	erates, decele ibution of the	rates, or cha vehicle shif	nges direc- ts.			
is shift of weight i	s called weigh	t transfer.				
fective use of weigh an EV.	t transfer is	critical for	safe handli	ng	)	1
eight transfer wins	or loses on th	e race track.				,
eight transfer will	keep you alive	on the road.				•
n a moving vehicle i he direction, or bot ear, either side, or	h, weight can	transfer to tl	he velocity he front or	•		
pecifically where th ind of change the op	e weight trans erator makes.	fers ta, depe	nds on the	,		ø
s of Changing Veloci	ty on Weight T	ransfer				•
he trainees to predi of the vehicle for	ct what will ho	appen to the dactions.	dow nward			
<i>:</i>						•
••		•	· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			Ï
			1			٠
	<u>.</u>				- ,	
	,		A STATE OF THE STA			203



IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL UNIT `I-E-15 **PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES NOTES TSG - I-E-9 PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 5b Imagine a fulcrum under the vehicle's center of gravity. lerating. TSG - I-E-10 nward force at B (rear) is increased. e weight and traction at rear tires (unless wheels are nning). ing or decelerating. nward force at A (front) is increased. e weight on the front tires. sibly better steering control due to increased "bite" front tires.



IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL	. ,	UNIT PAGE	I-E-16	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	ı	OTES		]
s of Changing Direction on Weight Transfer	TSG - I-E-10	4	. 1,	
are all familiar with the way a vehicle leans in a curve.  is lean is because of increased downward force on one side the vehicle.		÷.		
he trainees to predict what will happen to the downward in the vehicle during right and left turns.	1 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		's ( <u>'</u>	٠.
ght-hand turns.	· ·	7	*	
ownward force at D (left side) is greater.			•	-
ft-hand turns.		d	*	
ownward force at C (right side) is greater.		1		\$
he trainees to describe the forces which make the vehicle left in a right turn and lean right in a left turn.				
entrifugal force and inertia "push" the vehicle away from he center of the curve.				
hus, the vehicle leans to the outside of the curve.	,			,
propriate for this group of trainees, explain the special derations applying to vehicles with a high center of gravity th "live" loads.	·			
ith a high center of gravity the "lean" is more pronounced nd the possibility of rolling over increased.				
ehicles with "live" loads, such as pumpers with unbaffled ater, can be pushed from the intended track as weight hifts.		~		
•				$\int$
	e .	,	207	/.

IMPORTANT PHYSICAL FORCES AND EV CONTROL	UNIT PAGE I-E-17
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
e trainees what happens in a high speed sharp right-hand f the brakes are suddenly applied.	FSG - I-E-10
cause of the centrifugal force, most of the weight is on e left-side tires.	
en brakes are applied still more of the vehicle's weight ansfers to the front.	
us, most of the weight is on the front left tire.	
o possibilities are: (1) The left front tire can tear off e rim and (2) the front left tire will act like a pivot and e vehicle will spin out of control around that tire.	
pension and Weight Transfer	TSG - I-E-11
EV's suspension works to balance the forces (during a nge in direction or velocity).	
ooth out weight transfer (make it more gradual).	
ep all four wheels firmly on the ground.	
ep the vehicle level	
n changing the vehicle direction, good drivers work with suspension, not against it.	
ey slow up or widen the track if the vehicle is leaning much.	
ey avoid abrupt changes in direction or velocity which could ft vehicle's weight suddenly and cause the suspension to erreact (possible loss of control).	1
	* * END OF MODULE 1 * *

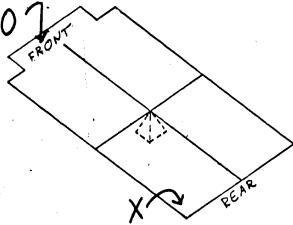
I-E-18

		4	of American	
	Review Exerc	<u>ises</u>		
	<b>7</b>			
ite a brief description	of each of the tollo	wing terms:	The second	
Velocity:		The state of the s		
Rate of motion or speed.			7.	
Centrifugal force:		***		
The force that pushes an object	(vehicle) away from the center	of its turning radius.		
Inertia				•
Inertia is the physical force that	causes a moving object (vehicle	e) tend to star in mot	in in the street direction	on/
	3:			1.
Friction:				
The resistance to slipping, or, th	e rubbing together of two surfe	aces.s	1. ii.	
*	1:		***	
				hi.
				•
				•
	<b>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </b>			· ;
				,

n the drawing below:

. Put an "X" on the prace that the downward force would be greatest if you were accelerating through a right turn.

Put a "0" on the place that the downward force would be greatest if you were braking.



State the primary cause of brake fade.

Heat, due to extended, hard braking.

UNIT

I-F-1

# Description of Unit.

unit is the longest of the course. It covers all aspects of the actual operation of gency vehicles.

#### le 1 - 20-30 Minutes

CONTENT/STRUCTURE OF THIS UNIT. A brief outline of unit content.

USE OF LIGHTS AND SIREN. Including legal aspects and techniques for use of lights and siren.

#### le 2 - 30 Minutes

BASIC CONTROL TASKS. The two topics covered in this module are backing up and parking.

### le 3 - 20-30 Minutes

URBAN DRIVING. This module covers urban driving, with heavy emphasis on urban driving in the emergency mode.

#### le 4 - 40-60 Minutes

NEGOTIATING INTERSECTIONS. This module emphasizes the procedure for and importance of negotiating intersections, particularly when traveling in the emergency mode. The end of the module consists of several pages of practice.



UNIT PAGE

I-F-2

4

# Description of Unit (Continued)

# <u>lle 5</u> - .20-30 Minutes

TURNING AROUND TO REVERSE DIRECTION. This module includes procedures and cautions for three separate categories of turnabouts: U-turns, two-point turnabouts, and three-point turnabouts.

## <u>lle 6</u> - 30-40 Minutes

FOLLOWING ANOTHER VEHICLE. This module provides standards and procedures for estimating following distance. It also includes a discussion of stopping distance and practice

## <u>1e 7</u> - 45 Minutes

PASSING ANOTHER VEHICLE. Includes judgments to make before passing, exact procedure for executing a passing maneuver, tips to avoid mishap, and some considerations that apply the being passed.

## <u>le 8</u> – 45 Minutes

EXPRESSWAY OPERATION. Includes entering/exiting expressways, cloverleafs, acceleration/deceleration lanes, beltways, and "driving at the limit."

# <u>le 9</u> - 60 Minutes

DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED. Coverage in this module is geared to emergency mode operation--







OPERATION

UNIT PAGE

I-F-3

## Description of Unit (Continued)

Exercises - 45 Minutes

n review questions on material presented in the nine modules of this unit. Time te allows for discussion and explanation after trainees have completed exercises.





I - F - 4

# Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

## dule 1

the end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to state the purpose of emergency signaling equipment.

Given a list of statements relating to use of emergency signaling equipment, will be able to identify those statements that are correct.

### dule 2



the end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to state the correct wheel position for a vehicle that is parked on a slope.

Given a description of a backing mishap, will be able to describe actions that might have been taken to avoid the accident.

#### dule 3

the end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to describe the provisions of their state's statute that deals with motorists' responsibilities for clearing a path for emergency vehicles.

Will be able to select the appropriate siren-use technique for negotiating through heavy





**OPERATION** 



I + H - 5

## Trainees' Knowledge Objectives (Continued)

#### 1e <u>4</u>

the end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to identify the correct percentage of emergency vehicle accidents that occur at intersections.

Will be able to select the appropriate method for checking traffic before attempting to cross an intersection.

Will be able to state the kind of turn (left or right) which requires a larger gap in cross-traffic and explain why.

#### ıle 5

he end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to name the safest type of turnabout.

Given three illustrations, will be able to illustrate the correct path for a vehicle making a U-turn.

Given an illustration of each, will be able to illustrate the correct path for a vehicle making a left and a right side-road turnabout.

22



1-F-

# Trainees' Knowledge Objectives (Continued)

### ile 6

he end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to describe two methods of estimating following distance.

Given a list of several conditions, will be able to select those that indicate following distance should be increased.

Given a list of several statements relating to following distance, will be able to identify those that are correct.

#### <u>le 7</u>

he end of this module, the trainees:

Will be able to state two types of road configuration that indicate it is unsafe to pass.

Given a list of several conditions, will be able to select those that would indicate it is unsafe to pass.

#### <u>le 8</u>

he end of this module, the trainees:

will be able to give an accurate explanation of what a "Yield" sign means.

will be able to select the correct siren-use technique for entering/exiting expressways.





## Trainees' Knowledge Objectives (Continued)

## ıle 9

the end of this module, the trainees:

Given two drawings, will be able to select the one that illustrates a properly banked road.

Given a listing of several incomplete sentences relating to driving curved roads, will be able to insert the word that best completes the sentence.

Given an illustration of two vehicles' path of travel through a curve, will be able to select the vehicle that has chosen the safest path.





· Autor

I-F-8.

# Instructor Preparation Activities

## ile 1

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.

Preparation for I-F-13. Bring a copy of the state statutes you prepared for Unit I-B to class so you will be prepared to provide information to trainees on emergency signaling equipment.

Preparation for I-F-14. If possible, obtain information on the type of emergency lights and siren the trainees' on the job vehicles will have. Also, obtain instructions for their operation and be prepared to discuss their operation in class.

Chalkboard and chalk. pment:

rials: None

le 2

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials; no additional preparation is required.

Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector. pment:

rials: Transparency Nos. 6, 7, 8.





## Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

## 1e 3

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.

Preparation for I-F-26. Find out what your state's statutes say about motorists yielding the right-of-way to EVs (e.g., pull to curb). Be prepared to present this information in class.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk.

rials: None

le 4

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials; no additional preparation is required.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

rials: Transparency Nos. 9, 10, 11.

#### le 5

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.

2.0



# Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

Preparation for I-F-41. Find out the approximate turning radius of the EVs the trainees will operate on the job, and figure out how many 12' lanes those vehicles would require for a U-turn. Be prepared to present this information in class.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

erials: Transparency Nos. 12, 13, 14, 15.

#### ıle 6∈

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials; no additional preparation is required.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

rials: Transparency No. 16.

## le 7

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials; no additional preparation is required.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk.

rials: None.





# Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

#### 1e 8

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials; no additional preparation is required.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

rials: Transparency Nos. 17, 18.

## <u>le 9</u>

Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.

Preparation for I-F-84. Find out the local or departmental policy regarding high-speed EV operation. Be prepared to present this information in class.

pment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

rials: Transparency No. 19.

## <u>ew Exercises</u>

tion 5. The answer to this question does not appear in your copy of the Review Exercises. use it is dependent on your state's statutes. Find the answer in your State Motor Vehicle and note it on your copy of the Review Exercises so that you can present it in class.

## tional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference nos.: 3, 8, 15, 21, 38, 39, 68.

^	OPERATION					UNIT PAGE		I-F	-12
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES				<i>.</i>	NOTES			
/STI	RUCTURE OF THIS UNIT	*	*	*	BEGI	N MODU	LE 1	* *	*
all	Operation, is the longest unit in the course. It aspects of the actual operation of Emergency Vehicles. ctured in terms of operating tasks.	TSG	-	Ι-	F5			÷	,
r ti es.	ne module titles (use Unit Description page) with the Mention:				,	· t			
avy r ro	coverage in the proper way to accomplish each task un- outine conditions is provided.			•	·	•			; · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
•Mo mo	ost EV accidents <u>do not occur</u> when EV is in emergency ode.								:
cted	ding section of each module (except the last) is di- to special considerations for performing the operating in the emergency mode.						,		•
e sp	nodule (no. 9) covers operation at speeds in excess of seed limit. The entire module applies, therefore, to ion in emergency mode.								
* *	Ton in emergency mode.						f		
						٨	•		
	· ·					•			
							٠		
									, ,
		1							
			٠					1	
									)

OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	Į-F-13
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		OTES	**
LIGHTS AND SIREN	TSG - 1-F-6		7 · · · ·
spects	:		7
hts and sirens are used to inform traffic of an EV's prece and thus, to aid in clearing a path for the EV.			
e regard must always be exercised, even in the most serious emergencies.			
t state laws require the EV to use emer ency signaling ipment whenever any of the exemptions are exercised.			
he trainees exactly what the laws in this state say. Be o point out:			
is does not mean that every time there is an emergency, gnaling equipment must be used.			
•Whenever there is an emergency, if exemptions are not being exercised use of signaling equipment is at the operator's discretion.			•
r instance, all signaling equipment would not be required an ambulance were transporting a patient to a medical fality if the ambulance were traveling below the speed limit dobeying all other traffic laws. Patients having a heart tack should not be transported with siren operating.			
•If traffic were moving slowly the operator might elect to use emergency signaling equipment.			
of signaling equipment doesn't guarantee operator safety, does it free him from the possibility of civil or criminal pility if a mishap does occur.	<i>t</i>		
238			219



		*		
E .	OPERATION .		UNIT PAGE	I-F-14
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
}		TSG - I-F-6	_	
rticu law	lar type and configuration of emergency lights is set and local policy.		,	•
w the y for	locally applicable, specific light arrangements and use gof various configurations of emergency lights.			
erati	ng procedures.			*
v ope	rating procedures; controls, options, etc.			
me∕li	mitations on emergency light usage.			
Low	sun or glare can greatly reduce effectiveness.			
At and	night red beacons can be confused with traffic lights neons.			
Lig to	hts on high EVs may pass over motorists if EV is close rear of vehicle ahead.			•
	•			
		TSG - 1-F-7		
rticu licy.	lar type and siren options are set by law and local			
the	capabilities of the specific type of siren the ill use.			
rati	ng procedures.			
ope.	rating procedures; controls, options, etc.			
itat:	ions on siren usage.		V	

OPERATION	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	UNIT PAGE	I-F-15
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	T	VOTES	
ally siren sound travels forward from the vehicle in one shape.	TSC I-F-7		
The higher the frequency, the marrower the cone.			
The higher the frequency, the greater the distance the siren can be heard.	·		
The physical parameters that establish the effectiveness of sirens are: sound level and spectral content, directivity, propagation losses, vehicle insertion, loss, and vehicle background noise level.			
ese terms:			
•Vehicle insertion loss is the difference in sound level observed at the drivers position in a vehicle from that observed at the same location without the vehicle, for the same external noise source.	<u>-</u> .		: .
ations:			
<ul> <li>High frequency siren is better for alerting motorists at some distance ahead.</li> </ul>			o
•A study has shown that existing sirens are effective only to-vehicles traveling in the same direction ahead of the emergency vehicle, to vehicles weaving slowly through dense stationary traffic and to pedestrians.			
The mode of operation of the siren is not relevant to detection.			
ns do not travel around buildings or corners very well.	<b>∞</b>		
•Turn off siren at intersections.		•	
	•		1 1



OPERATION .		UNIT I-F-15 (A)
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES
At high speeds it is possible to "out run" the siren.	•	
This means that vehicles in front of EV won't hear the siren before EV reaches them.		
Even at fairly close range, the siren may not be heard by a motorist with windows up, radio and air conditioner on.		
	, · · · · · · ·	•
,		
•		``.
		,
· ·		,

94!

Į.	UNIT PAGE	I-F-16
	NOTES	
TSG - I-F-8		
		•
	,	
,		
		ı
		•
3.56		
	٠	
,		
,		
,		
·.		24
	TSG - I-F-8	NOTES  TSG - I-F-8



OPERATION	PAGE I-F-16 (A)
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
•To be effective, a siren must be about 10dB higher than background noise in the other vehicles. An high noise environments, a siren is only adding *to' the problem because other drivers are not apt to hear the signal anyway.	
Vary the siren to avoid hypnotic effects.	
trainees the importance of learning to recognize the of hyponosis	
"Hypnotized" EV operators sometimes become vague and inattentive.	
"Hypnotized" EV operators tend to take unnecessary risks.	
<ul> <li>Preclude hypnosis by allowing short periods of siren silence.</li> </ul>	•
•Preclude hypnosis by varying the intensity of the siren.	•
Do not use the siren when it is unlikely to be effective.	
<ul> <li>When a road is lightly traveled, there is no reason to leave the siren operating.</li> </ul>	
•Use for warning pedestrians.	•
•Use in slow speed, low-background noise situations.	,
	* * END OF MODULE 1 * *

INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES  CONTROL TASKS  rectional and velocity control are accomplished by steering, and braking.  ese basic control tasks are all present in two slow-speed tivitiesbacking and parking.  Relatively simple tasks.  Good performance requires practice.  the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice wild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III) on that this module provides some pointers and tips for plishing these tasks safely.  3 Up  3 mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  Set backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor accidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences:  *Keep EVS out of service (while repairs are made).  *Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  *Cost taxpevers moneyEV operator's are taxpayers tool  *Create a bad public image.  ues to minimize backing accidents require common sense.		
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES  CONTROL TASKS  rectional and velocity control are accomplished by steering, rectional and velocity control are accomplished by steering, and braking.  rese basic control tasks are all present in two slow-speed tivitiesbacking and parking.  Relatively simple tasks.  Good performance requires practice.  the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice wild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III) on that this module provides some pointers and tips for polishing these tasks safely.  UP  mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  set backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor cidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences:  ** Regin MODULE 2 ***  ** BEGIN MODULE 2 ***  TSG - I-F-9  TSG - I-	OPERATION	
rectional and velocity control are accomplished by steering, celerating, and braking.  Ese basic control tasks are all present in two slow-speed tivitiesbacking and parking.  Relatively simple tasks.  Good performance requires practice.  the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice wild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III) on that this module provides some pointers and tips for plishing these tasks safely.  Up  mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  Set backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor cidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences:  Keep EVS out of service (while repairs are made).  **Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  **Cost taxpevers moneyEV operator's are taxpayers too!  **Create a bad public image.  ues to minimize backing accidents require common source.	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	
rectional and velocity control are accomplished by steering, celerating, and braking.  ese basic control tasks are all present in two slow-speed tivitiesbacking and parking.  Relatively simple tasks.  Good performance requires practice.  the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice wild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III) on that this module provides some pointers and tips for polishing these tasks safely.  UP  mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  est backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor cidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences:  *Keep EV* out of service (while repairs are made).  *Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  *Cost taxpevers moneyEV operator's are taxpayers too!  *Create a bad public image.  ues to minimize backing accidents require common sorts.	CONTROL TASKS	* * * BEGIN MODULE 2 * * *
Relatively simple tasks.  Good performance requires practice.  the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice wild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III) on that this module provides some pointers and tips for polishing these tasks safely.  Up  mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  est backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor cidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences.  Keep EVS out of service (while repairs are made).  Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  Cost taxpevers money - EV operator's are taxpayers tool  Create a bad public image.  ues to minimize backing accidents require common some	rectional and velocity control are accomplished by stocelerating, and braking.	
the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice aild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III). On that this module provides some pointers and tips for polishing these tasks safely.  Up  mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  Out backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor accidents, howevery can have wide ranging consequences:  •Keep EV, out of service (while repairs are made).  •Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  •Cost taxpelvers money - EV operator's are taxpayers tool  •Create a bad public image.	ese basic control tasks are all present in two slow-sptivitiesbacking and parking.	peed
the trainees that they will have the opportunity to practice wild skill in these tasks later in the course (in Part III) on that this module provides some pointers and tips for plishing these tasks safely.  Up  g mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents.  Ost backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor accidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences:  •Keep EVS out of service (while repairs are made).  •Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  •Cost taxpevers money - EV operator's are taxpayers too!  •Create a bad public image.	Relatively simple tasks.	
on that this module provides some pointers and tips for polishing these tasks safely.  By Up a mishaps account for a large proportion of EV accidents. Set backing accidents are relatively minor. Even minor cidents, however, can have wide ranging consequences:  • Keep EV out of service (while repairs are made).  • Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time).  • Cost taxpevers moneyEV operator's are taxpayers too!  • Create a bad public image.	Good performance requires practice.	
•Keep EVs out of service (while repairs are made). •Cause the operator a lot of paperwork (time). •Cost taxpevers moneyEV operator's are taxpayers too. •Create a bad public image.  ues to minimize backing accidents require common sense.	on that this module provides some pointers and tips for plishing these tasks safely.	t III).
•Cost taxpevers moneyEV operator's are taxpayers too! •Create a bad public image.  ues to minimize backing accidents require common someo	citeties, nowever, can have wide ranging consequences:	ir A
•Create a bad public image.	of the second se	ool
ues to minimize backing accidents require common sense.  few extra seconds; well worth it.		
25	ues to minimize backing accidents require common sens	e
		25



OPERATION '	,	UNIT PAGE	I-F	-18
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES		
so backing is minimized or eliminated. To do this, the ator must plan ahead:	TSG - I-F-9		, 1	
trainees what kinds of planning they could do. Include t the could do. Include	CHALKBOARD		,	
't park head-in if departure will be hurried.			•	
ect places that require least backing.				
ore entering a vehicle to be backed, survey intended path vehicle.	•	••		
vehicle <u>must</u> be backed:			•	
Station a crewmember outside vehicle to direct, if possible.				
•Crewmember should be to left rear of vehicle.				
Check for pedestrians and obstacles.			•	
Back SLOWLY (as if you expected to hit something).	<b>A</b>			
Constantly check mirrors for changes in the traffic situation or obstacles in EV's path.	TSG - I-F-10			•
When backing out of an alley, hidden driveway, etc., sound horn or "back-up alarm" for warning.		•		
•Points 4 and 5 are especially important for larger EVs.				
When turning while backing, check front fender to avoid front <b>c</b> ollision.				
•About 90 percent of the time operator should be looking to the rear.	,			253



OPERATION		JNIT PAGE	I-F-19	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	No	TES		-
vex mirrors are legal in your state, tell the trainees:	TSG - I-F-10			
operly positioned and adjusted, convex mirrors can be help- l in eliminating blind spots.				`
ypes: angle, perpendicular, and parallel.				
rking is a basic control task, but requires many driving ills.				
rking, when performed under stress can be difficult and me consuming.	•			
res for performing these parking maneuvers do not appear TSG. Suggest notetaking.	,			
e Parking	PRESENT TRANSPA	RENCY	6*	
EV J SIOCEPP.		2	ร์งี	

UNIT **OPERATION** I-F-20 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** rocedure: TSG - I-F-10 •Slow to no more than 10 mph. •Keep sedan 5 to 6 feet from rear of other cars; appropriate distance for larger EVs is approximately 1/3 their length. •Begin turning wheels when EV's front wheels have cleared vehicle beside intended space. •REMEMBER: Front humper and rear quarter panel will extend beyond the track of the wheels; the larger the EV the further the extension. rpendicular Parking. TSG - I-F-11 Sedans and vans. PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 7a cocedure: •Slow to no more than 10 mph. •Keep EV 7 to 8 feet from rear of parked vehicles.

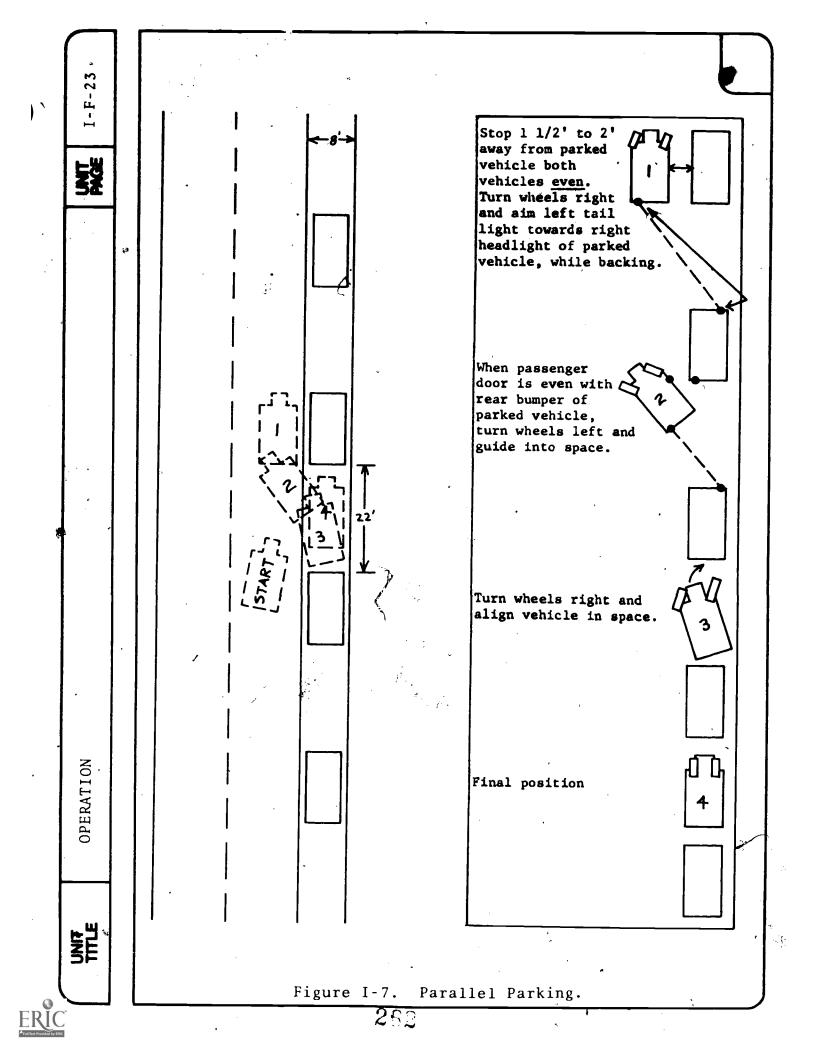


OPERATION UNIT I-F-21 **PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** •Begin turning wheels when EV's front bumper is in line TSG - 1-F-11 with edge of vehicle closest to intended parking space. Rear wheel's track to the inside of front ●REMEMBER: wheels, so to avoid mishap, enter the space straight, not at an angle. Long wheel-base vehicles. (Large EVs such as fire appara- PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 7b tus almost never have to perform this maneuver.) arge vehicles usually are backed into perpendicular space.

OPERATION .	UNI PAG		- 22
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTE	s	
rallel Parking. Parallel parking requires a space at least percent longer than EV. Operator must learn when to turn e wheels.	TSG - I-F-12		,
rocedures shown in the transparency (illustrated on the next work best for ordinary sedans, but by extension can be apto larger EVs. Use the transparency to explain the paralarking procedure.	PRESENT TRANSPARE	ENCY 8	• •
Set brake.  Leave vehicle in gear (if manual transmission).  If EV is large or heavy, place chocks.		•	
Always position the front wheels so that if the vehicle starts to roll:			
a. Wheels will hit the curb (and prevent rolling).		.•	,
b. Vehicle cannot roll through traffic lanes.			
erations: Backing and Parking in the Emergency Mode	•		
cking or parking in emergency mode must be done quickly.			
quires skill to do it fast without mishap.			
rainees what they can do to back or park most safely in ency mode.	,		
ot push themselves beyond their own level of skill. Also, ake time to do it properly; avoid the chance of a mishap nich would greatly delay performing their mission.	* * END OF MODU	LE 2 * *	
	<u> </u>		



ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC



e OPERATION .	UNIT PAGE I-F-24
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
DRIVING	* * * BEGIN MODULE 3 * * *
<u>uction</u>	TSG - I-F-14
en in normal, non-emergency conditions, operating an EV in ban areas requires a high degree of skill.	
V operators, public servants, must present good examples to ther motorists and pedestrians.	
t any time EV may be called into emergency service. Accients or delays could make EV unavailable for service.	~
ys to successful urban driving:	<i>*</i> ,
Keep alert.	,
•Children.	,
•Alleys.	
●Exhaust from parked cars.	( j)
•Cross walks.	*
Don't anticipate other motorists' actions.	,
a. Motorists sometimes signal turns or lane changes when they don't mean to.	
•In spite of how they signal, note direction motorist looks, way vehicle is pointing, whether they slow properly, etc	
<ul> <li>Motorists may enter or cross traffic without sufficient gap.</li> </ul>	

E	OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-25
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
с.	Motorists may try to beat a light, going through as it changes.	TSG - I-F-14		
ing '	to the trainees that effective drivers are constantly "What if" They have a general action plan in mind child pops out or a motorists pulls a crazy or unexpect-			
	•			•
erat	ions: Urban Driving in the Emergency Mode	Ĺ	. •	1
eeds ste	in excess of limit are rarely justifiedonly in the streme emergency.			
oo mu nat o	uch chance of unexpected motorist or pedestrian action could lead to an accident.			•
easor id mo equir	nable speed allows more time to react to such actions ore opportunity to control the EV if evasive action is red.		, ,	
an d ghts	driving in emergency mode requires effective use of and sirens to:			
War	rn motorists and pedestrians of the approaching EV.	(		
Cle hea	ear traffic and/or help the operator negotiate through avy or blocked traffic.			
oical eas:	motorists' reactions to lights and sirens in urban	TSG - I-F-15		
Gen slo	nerally, motorists will try to pull to the right and ow down or stop when they detect an approaching EV.			
•Mc a	ost motorists are more than willing to pull over to miss light or save a life.	\ \ •		0.00



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-26
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
fry the state's requirements for motorists to yield the right y to EVs.	TSC - I-F-15		,
•Some newer statutes require motorists to pull to the curb. Many divided main roads (or one-way streets) have curbs on both sides. Consequently, in some states motorists may pull to the left.			
Some motorists, however, will do senseless, unexpected thangs. A good EV operator is <u>always</u> aware of these possibilities.	-		,
he trainees what kinds of unexpected things motorists might have them note at least the following:	CHALKBOARD		e An
top dead in the middle of a lane, blocking the EV's forward rogress.			
ry to compete (race) with the EV, or beat the EV through an intersection:			,
othing at all. They will keep traveling at the same speed, oparently unaware of the EV's presence.			
the trainees that these persons may be truly unaware of 's presence; radio or air conditioner on; and failure to the rear-view mirror can contribute to this.			
a. Confused motorists:	~		• .
•The best way to handle confused drivers is to lay off the siren, give them a chance to think.			
•Tap horn or flash lights to try to ablish eye contact.		`)	,
			4
	<u> </u>		293

		,	
OPERATION '		UNIT PAGE	I - F - 27
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
•Once eye contact has been established, give hand or verbal signal indicating what action motorist should take. Be cautiousyou can't totally depend on motorists understanding hand signals.	TSG - I-I	3-15	
•May need to yell out instructions.	1	•	
ainees will be driving ambulances, point out that if the is not being used (to avoid patient stress) it is unwise l, as this could also cause patient stress.			
b. Unaware motorists:	,		
•Beware of startling unsuspecting motorists; they could respond hazardously.			
•Vary siren pitch and duration.			
•Use headlights, horn, or spot to get attention.			
•Have partner use P.A. to get attention.			
•Be patient, keep signaling!	,		
•Avoid passing on the right, unless it's the only way.			
•In extreme cases, it may be necessary for a crew- member (never the driver) to get out of the vehicle and direct traffic.			
traffic is blocked:			
n that traffic blockages are often unavoidable, particularing rush hours. Ask the trainees what can be done to rehe chances of encountering blocked traffic. (Answer: Route ng, including alternate rush-hour routes.)		,	
<del>)</del>			<u> </u>



E	OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I - F - 28		
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES				
- S1o	w down before reaching blockage.	TSG - I-F-15		•		
⊂ •Gi	ves a better view.					
●Ea ha	sier to detect what effect the signaling equipment is ving.			, (		
Use	siren intermittently.		•	•		
Be	patient.					
•If si	traffic is unable to move, it does no good to keep the ren wailing constantly.			, ,		
•It be	could do some harm. Everyone involved is likely to come irritable and impatient.					
Don tra	't travel in opposing traffic lanes unless you know ffic is cleared for at least one block.					
				•		
•						
		,		,		
. •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			,		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
*		,		_		
·		* * END OF I	MODULE	3 * *		
		<del></del>		2'		

UNIT \* OPERATION \* I-F-29 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES NOTES ATING INTERSECTIONS 🕹 BEGIN MODULE luction 🛝 I-F-16 sections are the most accident Tikely areas. the following statistics on the chalkby CHALKBOARD. gidents at intersections: All Motor Vehicles Emergency Vehicles in way over half of all EV accidents occur at intersections. ainees to think of possible reasons. Include the following: lany intersections restrict visibility. V operators can misjudge tratific situation and clearance. mergency mode: •Some motorist's become confused at multi-lane or crowded intersections (especially when they have to respond to an EV). •Many motorists don't hear or see the approaching EV. Their "responses," therefore, are often totally unpre-dictable. \*Two or more EVs, responding to the same call, often at intersections.



**OPERATION** UNIT I-F-30 PAGE STRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** iques for Negotiating Intersections TSG - I-F-16 efore crossing an intersection EV operator must make sure nere is an adequate gap in traffic. From a full stop, EV needs about four seconds to cross an intersection 30 feet vide (2 lanes). For larger vehicles time varies according to size, accelerative capability, etc. Cars approaching from either direction should be about six second from intersection. ulletOperator should look left, then right, then left again before crossing an intersection. PRESENT TRANSPAR 6 SEC. GAP 6 SEC. GA



OPERATI UNIT I-F-31 **PAGE** INSTRUCTION ONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** ght turns at an intersection. TSG - I-F-17 From a stop it takes about six seconds to turn right and accelerate to 30 mph. When the operator begins the turn, any vehicle approaching the intersection from the left should be at least seven to eight seconds away from the intersection. •If a right turn is started with an eight-second gap, the vehicle approaching from the left will be a safe two seconds behind the EV once the turn and acceleration are completed. In faster cross traffic, a larger gap is required for safety. 8 SEC. GAP PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 9b SEC. FOLLOWING DISTANCE



UNIT I-F-32 **OPERATION** PAGE NOTES AL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES TSG - I-F-18 t turns at intersections. ft turns require a larger gap than right turns because of e need to cross traffic lanes. PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 9c 9 SEC. GAP 30MPH s for turning at various cross-traffic speeds. the following table, present the information that is rele-CHALKBOARD o this particular class of trainees. peed of rge Truck 11 10 30 10 12 111 10 10 40 13 12 50 55



OPERATION .		UNIT PAGE	1-F-33
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	1	HOTES	
rations: Negotiating Intersections in the Emergency Mode	TSG - I-F-18		•
en should be turned off for a short period just before ering an intersection. This will:	100 - 1-1-10		
Allow operator to hear other Es.	TSG - J-F-19	Ą	•
Lessen the chances of a "panic" reaction by motorists at the intersection.		Liu	
vide as much information as possible to other motorists.	20 40	,	
EV operator should use all means of signaling, cluding:			r .
a. Lights.	* วัวังครร	andraid. Andraid	ngs Typing ( and a haja)
b. Siren.		1	
trainees why lights and siren alone may not be sufficient for motorists.	ų.		
ndows up, air conditioner, radio on, etc.		•	
ens don't carry around corners very well.	y / "		
sun or glare can make emergency lights useless.			
c. Turn signals.	,		
d. Lane position.			* ************************************
e. Eye contact or hand signals.	<u>ن</u> و		
Signal intent at least 100 feet in advance of an urban intersection (200 feet in the country).	4.		,
	***		

OPERATION*		UNIT PAGE	I - F - 34
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
ck for fraffic control indicators in advance of intertion.	TSG - I-F-19		
ne markings.	* 13		1
gnals.	₩.		
op or yield signs.	•	,	•
osswalks.	` <b> </b>		•
ck for hazards well in advance of intersection.		, ,	
Make sure driver's window is partly openthis will enab detection of other EVs, if in the vicinity.	le `	•	
Stay especially alertsearch for:		4	l
a. Actual hazards.			
e trainees to think of examples of actual hazards.			,
•Bad road surface.		•	
•Motorists in your lane.			•
b. Potential hazards.		٠,	
aines to think of examples of potential hazards.			. •
•Bicyclists, pede <u>st</u> rians.			•
	4	•	
		1 T	
		A STATE OF S	
The depth of the or		<del>-,</del>	
	بيد بيد		2

		<u> </u>	·					
OPERATION						JNIT PAGE	I - F - 35	5
INSTRUCTIONAL CONT	ENT MESENT	ATION GUIDELINE	S	,	NO	TES	<u></u>	
cticeyou decide.			,	TSG - I		,	; .	
What are the hazards	in the follo	owing sixuatio	n?	TSG I	· :,	\ <del>RI:</del> NCY	: ,10a	
•Two moving vehicles •Pedestrian and bicyc			S .					نو
•					ء • • •	•	, and of	
		for the state of t		ê			<u> </u>	

- •Top picture: EV operator has limited his field of vision--he cannot see any of the potential hazards: bicyclist, pedestrian, or either vehicle that will cross the intersection.
- •Bottom picture: All potential hazards and one of the stop signs can be seen by this EV operator who is following at a safer distance.

UNIT OPERATION". I = F - 37**PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** Vehicle "A" is a large truck. Why is this EV operator TSG - I-F-21 in trouble? What problems does the building create? PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 10b (The building blocks •Vehicle B does not see or hear EV. most of the siren sound.)/ • If the EV does not slow down almost to a stop at the intersection, a collision is probable. •One useful trick is for the EV operator to look under the wheels of truck A. He might see B time to take appropriate action.

UNIT						UNIT PAGE	I-F-38
4			PRESENTATION GUIDEI	P		VOTES	
4.	expect any oncome EV operator avoi	ing traff:	ore turning right. ic from the right. oblems?	He doesn't How can the	TSG - 1 F-22	,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
ı					PRESENT TRANS	SPARENCY	Y .11
						٠	9
v					·	, n	# 1
	ONE WAY			ů	:	,	) )
						,	
· .	A	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		<b>&gt;</b> [[			
7	-Q		•Sirens help he	re.	i i	a i	
		B	*Never pull int lane at an int	o an oncoming ersection.		, , ,	
Ì			•Stay far enoug vehicle in fro to permit a go	nt of the EV	, <u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>		
1			intersection.	) a		7	
2ERIC Prolitical Provided by 1880			и •	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	* 1	,	29/

**OPERATION** UNIT I-F-39 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** How would you handle this situation--discussion, TSG - I-F-23 Situation: It can be hazardous when one EV operator follows another EV through an intersection. A motorist who has waited at the intersection and yielded to the first EV will, in many cases, proceed to drive through the intersection when the first EV has passed, not expecting the second EV to be so close behind; or perhaps not expecting it to be there at a 11. SHOULD AN EV OPERATOR, WHO IS FOLLOWING ANOTHER EV. 100? at the intersection, or slow until you are sure of other ista reactions. ifferent siren pitch or warble than the lead EV is using. END OF MODULE 4

E	OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I - F -	40
10	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	. 1	KOTES .		ų
IG AROU	UND TO REVERSE DIRECTION * *	* BEGIN	MODULE	5 * *	*
outs		I - F - 24	·		
about ion.	is the fastest way to turn around to the reverse	•	·		
y kind rforme	d of turnabout can create a hazardous situation when ed on a street.		,	Y	
uxnabo mergen	outs are illegal in some states unless the EV is in the				
n cong afer,	gested areas, going around the block may not only be but also faster.				,
alea	y a safe location for a turnabout is important; choose with good visibility. You should have a clear view entire path of travel and all traffic lanes.				
į į	111s, curves, and blind intersections.			,	
pe's of	turnabouts (in order of increased hazard potential).				
U- <b>tu</b>	irns.	,			
Two-	point turns.				
Thre	e-point turns.				, i
•The haz	Y-turn and bootleg turn should be avoidedthey are ardous.	•	;	(	
					'
·				, (-	$\overline{}$
					243
_					

Ε	OPERATION		UNIT	1-F-41
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	· · ·
<u>18</u>		TSG - I-F-24		
turn	is the least hazardous type of turnabout.		<b>4</b>	. ,
turn od vi	is easiest to perform but requires a wide roadway and sibility.	•		,
turn w unl	is illegal in many areas. EVs are not exempt from this ess they are in the emergency mode.		,	·
te on	approximate turning radius of the EVs the trainees will the job, indicate the number of 12' lanes required for For example, about 40' is required for a U-turn in a			
this	point to the trainees:			
he fe	wer traffic lanes crossed, the safer the U-turn.			
	**	•		
	•			
				-
	r.			
		•	•	•
			Ž.	ı
		·	, A <sub>4</sub> , y	
297		-	25	13 .



UNIT PAGE **OPERATION** I-F-42 INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT / PRESENTATION GUIDELINES NOTES TSG - I-F-25 PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 12a PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 12b U-TURN USING INTERSECTION CHECK TRAFFIC AT X

UNIT PAGE OPERATION I-F-43 PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 13 CHECK TRAFFIC AT X. 10' MEDIAN -CHECK TRAFFIC AT X. (Vehicles with a long wheelbase may nee execute this turn the outer lane.) CHECK TRAFFIC AT X. HEAVY EV'S - WATCH OUT FOR SOFT SHOULDER!



UNIT OPERATION °I - F - 44 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** oint Turnabouts TSG nese turns are made when the road is too narrow, or restricted isibility won't permit a U-turn. The type of turnabout made depends on whether there is a side road or alley on the right or left side of the road. Driveways are private property. Don't use them. (They may not support the weight of larger vehicles.) ight side-road turnabout; PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 14a Good Not Good Right side-road turnabout. he trainees why one method is good and one is not good. er: Backing into side-road eliminates necessity for backing s two lanes of traffic.)

3:14

UNIT PAGE OPERATION I-F-45 **NOTES** eft side-road turnabout: TSG eft side-road turnabout is more hazardous than the right ide-road turnabout. in turn. Note that at position 3 the EV is partially off oad. This minimizes the hazard of backing into traffic. Left side-road turnabout. Point Turnabouts ese are the most hazardous turnabouts. ey should be used only when: The road is too narrow for a U-turn.

	<u>·</u>	•	
OPERATION ,		UNIT PAGE	I-F-46
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
There are no alleys or side roads on either side.  Traffic is light.	TSG - I-F-2	3	1 ·
rnabout. The front and rear of the EV will extend over curb during the maneuver.	#\$G - I-F-29	<b>)</b>	
curb is high, it could damage undercarriage.			
disadvantage is that traffic is crossed three times.		•	) + •
(a) (b) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c	PRESENT TRAI	ISPARENCY	15a
Y-turnabout.			

UNIT **OPERATION** I-F-47 **PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** otleg-turnabout. This is faster than the Y-turnabout, but TSG - I-F-29 rder to perform well. he EV only crosses traffic once in a bootleg-turnabout. PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 15b Bootleg-turnabout. erations: Turnabouts in the Emergency Mode TSG - I-F-30 emergency mode, if any exemptions are being exercised (e.g., turn where illegal) emergency signaling equipment must be tivated. ergency mode may dictate performing more hazardous types of rnabouts. lways use regular turn signaling equipment, as well as mergency signaling equipment. \* \* END OF MODULE 5 \* \*



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I - F - 48		
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES				
ING ANOTHER VEHICLE	* * * BEGIN	N MODUL	E 6 * * *		
4, approximately 150,000 disabling injuries and 500 deaths ed from accidents caused by vehicles that were following osely.* Three things the operator must learn, to be able low at appropriate, safe distances:	TSG - 1-F-31				
at is a safe following distance?					
chniques to help judge or estimate following distance.					
en to increase following distance.					
s a Safe Following Distance?			1		
operator is following at a safe distance if he can:					
op without mishap if the vehicle in front comes to a sudden op, or					
ke evasive action (steer around) to avoid mishap if the nicle in front comes to a sudden stop.					
the trainees that evasive actions will be covered more fully later unit (Unit G).			1		
ting Following Distance			(		
rainees what information they need to estimate appropriate ving distance.					
ow stopping distance relates to vehicle speed (and weight).		<i>t</i>			
elationship between stopping distance and following distance.					
		,			
<u> </u>		•			



	OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-49
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	N	IOTES	1
	lines to make judgment of the appropriate following ace easier.	TSG - I-F-31		
t is	s stopping distance?			
the	following equation on the chalkboard:	CHALKBOARD		
king	on Distance g Distance		,	
Rea the	action distance is the distance a vehicle travels from the time the driver recognizes the need to stop until ake pedal movement begins.			
a.	Average drivers require about 3/4 second to react.  •Factors influencing reaction time are:	,		
	<ul><li>Driver alertness (fatigue, drugs, allergies, etc.).</li><li>Driver capability (vision, performance under stress etc.).</li></ul>			1
<b>b</b>	Distance traveled in 3/4 second will be greater as vehicle speed is increased.	TSG - I-F-32		V -
	king distance is the distance traveled from the first ke pedal movement until the vehicle comes to a full op.	٨		ţ
	ere is no "average" braking distance. Braking distance ries greatly according to:			ţ
	•Vehicle speed (higher speedgreater braking distance).			

	•		
OPERATION -		UNIT PAGE	I-F-50
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		IOTES	<u>-</u>
•Vehicle weight (heavier vehicles tend to require greater stopping distances).	TSG - I-F-32	14	
•Vehicle condition (brakes, tire tread).			
•Road surface, both composition (asphalt, concrete, etc.) and condition (icy, rutted, etc.).	, t		
Stopping distances for various types of vehicles at various speeds are shown in the chart on the next page.		•	
a. All stopping distances on the chart assume driver uses 3/4 second to react.			
b. All stopping distances on the chart are based on "hard, dry surfaces."	•		i.
he trainees to use the chart to estimate the total stopping nces for each type of vehicle at 70 mph.	TSG - I-F-33		
edansabout 530 feet			
ight trucksabout 560 feet			
eavy 2-axleabout 610 feet		,	
-axleabout 680 feet (more than 1/8 mile)	6		
rize as follows:			
he heavier the vehicle, the longer it will take to stop.			
he higher the speed, the longer it will take to stop.			
			216



UNIT PAGE OPERATION I-F-51 STOPPING DISTANCES AT VARIOUS HIGHWAY SPEEDS ping Distances Three-Axie Trucks & Combinations by the Numbers h Bar Are Based on rfaces Feet Per Sec.\_ 15 73 73 50 29 59 Miles Per Hr. 10 50 10 10 - 20 11 22 11 13 24 FT. 18 FT. 30 55 40 52 FT. 50 72 FT 62 FT. 67 100 FT. 92 125 FT. 105 ver Reaction Distance is shown by number above the line on :/ h bar. This distance is based/on a 149 FT 148 FT. 125 ction time of % second, which is a ical reaction for most drivers under 165 st traffic conditions. 209 FT. 205 249 FT 243 FT. icle Stopping Distance is shown by number below the line in sech
This distance is based on provisions
he Uniform Vehicle Code for 20 mph,
sted when necessary at higher speeds
onform with studies of the U.S. Bureau 225 280 FT. 255 310 FT. 320 375 FT. 366 FT. 426 FT. 436 FT. from Employers-Commercial mpanies 531 FT. Figure I-8. Stopping Distances at Various Highway Speeds. 318



UNIT I-F-52 **OPERATION** PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES NOTES TSG - I-F-32 ow to tell when the EV is far enough behind. Following at the full stopping distance (as shown on the chart) is not only unnecessary, it is also impossible! •If an EV were traveling that far behind a vehicle in front, other vehicles would constantly pass the EV. PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 16a 100-150 IS THE APPROPRIATE FOLLOWING DISTANCE AT 50 M.R.H. Ç, 55' IS THE REACTION TIME DISTANCE AT 50 mPH - Z43' IS THE <u>STOPPING DISTANCE</u> AT 50 MPH . An appropriate following distance will allow enough time to come to a complete stop if lead vehicle panic stops (stops as fast as possible by braking). •Therefore, safe following distance is greater than the distance required for reaction time, but less than total stopping distance. the general rule for calculating following distances (for s) on the chalkboard. H (Vehicle speed) **CHALKBOARD** nimum following distance (in feet).



OPERATION	UNIT PAGE	I-F-53
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	
ys to judge following distance:	TSG - I-F-34	
n that it is hard to judge when a vehicle is 125' away much easier to approximate the distance in terms of ca s or in terms of the number of seconds apart the vehic	ar ,	*
a. Estimate car lengths—one car length for every 10 A full-sized car is approximately 20 feet long—estimating car lengths provides minimum following tance.		•
b. Two-second rulekeep a separation of at least two seconds between the EV and the vehicle being followed.	owed.	
•Three seconds is a lot safer.		
•Three seconds recommended for larger vehicles.		4
e transparency to explain the two-second technique.	PRESENT TRANSPARENCY	16b
•Begin counting (1001, 1002, etc.) when the vehic front passes a marker on or beside the road.	le in	
•A pole, sign or tree would be a good marker.		
•Stop counting when the EV reaches the same marke	r.	
n how using the two-second method will automatically in the following distance as speed is increased. (Two-technique is illustrated on the next page.)	n-	
s the merits of each method of judging following dista e to provide the following information:	nce;	
r length methodfocus of eyes stays constant, but pro timates are difficult for many people.	per	

		₹ "			/ 2
	OPERATION	á z		UNIT PAGE	I - F - 54
\r r	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDE	RUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES			
at.e: e fo zaro is lec: "c}	a good idea for every operator to try bo the one that works best for him. The t ecked" against each other to get a feel	e need to shift ty to detect oth methods and two methods can	TSG - I-F-34		6
l 1 ov	ving distance.				·
-	tant Count				
5	tart Count			•	
Ē					
	Fixed Object				
11	One-Thousand-One"				
_				•	<b>.</b>
	One-Thousand-Two''				Û.
_	<u>-</u> <u>-</u> -		<b>1</b>		
_		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			324



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-55
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT / PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	i	OTES	
nould Following Distance Be Increased?	TSG - I-F-35		
crease following distance by 50 percent: if vehicle ahead unusual, EV is large and/or heavy, EV is not adequately intained.		7	
re apparatus would safely use a thres-second rule or one paratus length for every 10 mph.	·	<i>i</i>	
ble following distance: if road surface is loose or slip- y (wet, dirt, gravel) vision is obscured (rain, fog, dust, og) or driver is not fully alert.			
ple following distance: if road surface is packed snow or			
<u>e</u>		•	
two trainees and give some time to answer each of the ing questions. Make sure the answers that appear below vered. Encourage class participation and discussion.	•		
olice officer is driving to the station at the end of a ft. He is very tired and the road is covered with hard w. By how much should he increase his following distance?			
e fact that the officer is tired, and perhaps not fully ert, would indicate that following distance should be ubled. Since the road is covered with snow, however, llowing distance should be tripled.	,		
		•	
			300

OPERATION	•	UNIT PAGE	I-F-56	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	1	NOTES		
large fire apparatus (elevated platform) is being driven on high-speed expressway. The operator is taking the apparatus the city garage for service; some difficulties in the vecle's braking system have been observed. By how much should e driver increase following distance?		, .		
n this instance, since the vehicle is a large, heavy apparaus, normal following distance would be 3 seconds or 1 appaatus length for every 10 mph. Since the vehicle is not in ood condition, following distance should be increased by 50 ercent (to approximately 5 seconds or 1-1/2 apparatus engths for each 10 mph).	•		*	
erations: Following Distance in the Emergency Mode	TSG - I-F-36			
spite of the stress and urgency of an emergency run, the ws of physics do not change. It still takes 243 feet to op a sedan from 50 mph, and longer for larger vehicles!		ū	•	
ould following distance be decreased when traveling in the ergency mode?				
ss the following points. The key realization the trainees d reach is that they don't gain anything by reducing follow-istance in the emergency mode.				
any operators' reactions and performance get worse under tress. Each operator must learn his own individual capabilty to respond to stress.				
otorists may react in crazy ways to lights and sirens. If hey stop or slow drastically, the EV operator needs the full mount of following distance to respond.				
greater following distance permits the EV operator to get ne "big picture" of the traffic situation.	* * END OF	MODULE	6 * * 328	



UNIT OPERATION I-F-57 **PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** G ANOTHER VEHICLE \* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 7 \* \* \* ng Does It Take to Pass? TSG - I-F-37 highway speeds (40 to 60 mph) in a sedan, a safe pass can completed in 10 seconds. in how passing time varies for different types of vehicles se of the variation in vehicle's accelerative capabilities. Figures assume the EV's starting speed is approximately the same as that of the vehicle to be passed. Figures allow a complete pass (including smooth return to the right lane). terms of distance, a 10-second pass requires 1/6 mile at mph. Due to the possibility of an oncoming vehicle, operor must allow 1/3 mile of visible roadway before initiating 60 mph 60 mph 1/6 mile in 10 seconds 1/6 mile in 10 seconds 1/3 mile total distance used in 10 seconds by vehicles approaching each other at 60 mph



	OPERATION	UNIT PAGE	I-]	F-58
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES		7
	with EV on the right needs a clear path of nearly $1/3$ TSG - I-F-37 safe pass.			
nt in istan	general terms, the passing distance and visible road- ce requirements for various speeds. CHALKBOARD			
rting	Speed Passing Distance Visible Roadway			
30 п	oh 450 ft. 900 ft.			
35 ฑ	oh 525 ft. 1,050 ft.(1/5 mile)			
45 m	oh 675 ft. 1,350 ft.			
55 m	oh 825 ft. 1,650 ft.			
60 m	oh 900 ft. 1,800 ft.(1/3 mile)		•	`
the t	rainees:			
ome d istan	rivers have trouble building a "mental picture" of ces.			
ental	to learn to perceive these distances is to make a note of vehicle size and road convergence at express- t points when the signs indicate the mileage to the			,
/10 m anc <b>e</b> s	le markers are also useful in learning to judge dis-			
erati	ons Before Passing TSG - I-F-38			
e beg hree	nning discussion of this topic, list on the chalkboard, tems to be considered before passing.			
			erar	332



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-59
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
ehicle Characterists.	TSG - I-F-38		
oad Information.			
raffic Situation.		•	
hicle Characteristics: Operator should be familiar with spe- fic vehicle. If operator drives different vehicles daily, must check out and familiarize himself with the specific adling characteristics of each vehicle.			٠
amiliarity with a vehicle can be enhanced by a thorough in- pection every day.	,		
Accelerative capacity?		e	v
Steering precision?			•
Braking capability?			•
•Braking capability can become tremendously important should the operator unexpectedly have to abort a pass.			
ad Information: Critical to successful passing. Kind of in- rmation to 100k for:			
Informational signs: "No Passing," "Intersection Ahead," etc.			·
Road markings: solid center-line, broken center-line, etc.			
Road configuration: hills, blind curves in intended passing area, intersecting roads, etc.			
			<del></del>
333			334



UNIT OPERATION! I-F-60 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** size the following points: TSG - I-F-38 any road markings and signs forbid passing for no apparent eason. Usually, however, there is a good reason: hidden riveway, school, damaged road gurface, poor road design, etc. ne good way for an EV operator to become a safer driver is o become familiar with his area. It is especially important o be alert for <u>new</u> road markings and signs. pass should never be attempted on a stretch of road where here are intersecting roads, even driveways. DRIVEWAY these points about the above illustration. ever pass stopped car (or line of cars) without first deterining why it is stopped.



	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Kg S		
	OPERATION .	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	•	UNI PAC	
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GL	JIDELIMES		NOTE	S
he EV as st o pas	did not take the time to determine opped. Had he done so, he never would s.	why the truck (B	TSG *-	I-F-38	
f the ave k	operator were very familiar with the nown why the truck was stopped.	e area, he might	,		
affic	Situation:	•	TSG -	I - F - 39	
Spe	ed of traffic flow.				
a.	Passing a vehicle that is traveling posted limit is ILLEGAL unless EV is	at the maximum s in emergency mo	ode.		
b.	On two- and three-lane roads, when theavy but moving at a constant speed to gain by passing.	traffic flow is d, there is litt	le		
Dis lan	tance of oncoming troff How much e of traffic is visit	of the oncoming			
he t lity	rainees the following kinds of things :	can limit			
ind	curves.				
.11cr	ests.				
d we	ather (fog, heavy rain, etc.).				
ize	the following points:	·			
ver j	pull abreast of another vehicle unles an be completed safely.	s you are sure 1	the		
two	and three-lane roads, never pass sto certain there is space ahead to retu	pped traffic rn to right lane	<b>.</b>	ř	

. 1			T	
	OPERATION.		NIT AGE	I-F-62
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NO.	res	
ecess	deciding to pass a larger vehicle, it is sometimes ary to pull slightly left (straddle the lane) is termine the traffic situation ahead.	nes n order TSG - I-F-39	1	
ing a	Passing Maneuver			
aneuv	ver assumes starting from a safe following dista	ince.		
eck t	rafficmirrors, blind spot.			
gnal	before lane change.	in .		
celer	rate while changing lanes.			
gnal	before returning to right lane.			
turn ar-vi	to right lane when all of passed vehicle is vis ew mirror.	ible in		•
cel	directional signal, resume cruising speed.	TSG - I-F-40		
asse	<u>·</u> d			
pas cou	sed less often than other vehicles. When being rtesies should be extended:	passed		
not	change speed while being passed.	an V		
erat irrou	or should keep constantly aware of the position nding vehicles.	of		
ten cle	drivers speed up (unintentionally) as the passi speeds up.	ng ve-		

OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-63
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	1	VOTES	
the passing driver gets into a dangerous situation, try to sist.	TSG - I-F-40		
ull as far to the right as possible.			
ccelerate or decelerate as necessary.			
or Avoiding Mishaps When Passing		J	
decision has been made to pass, and conditions are okay,			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
y in passing lane shortest time possible.			
stantly scan roadway for unmarked, intersecting roads.			•
many states it is illegal to pass if the pass will be in ocess when a side-road intersects from the left.			
ether or not it is illegal, it is dangerous!			
prepared to abort if conditions worsen:			
st vehicles can slow up much more quickly than the can celerate.			
less fully abreast of another vehicle, it is often safer to ll behind than to try to accelerate.			
rations: Passing in the Emergency Mode			
ce motorists will attempt to pull over, the need to pass be reduced.		,	, '
			40
1	:	<u> </u>	421



	•		<u> </u>	•
OPERATION		UNI PAG		I-F-64
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTE	s \	
aluation of risk vs. gain.	TSG - I	-F-40		•
Many passing situations are potentially hazardous, involving some risk. In the emergency mode, the gain (e.g., save a life) may justify increased risk.	v- TSG - I	-F-41		
When conditions are ideal, very little risk.		×		
•Ideal conditions:		1		
•Vehicle in good shape.				
•Road information okay.		·		
•Traffic situation light (or okay for pass).	,	•		,
When one or more conditions are questionable, risk increases.				
e trainees the following questions and discuss.				ø
a. How important is saving time?		. & .		
•Out-of-control fire in apartment building vs. brush fire in an isolated field?				
•Armed robbery in progress vs. day-old vandalism?				
•Childbirth with complications vs. epileptic seizure?	?			,
b. How much time will really be saved by passing? (How much faster will the EV be able to travel after the pass?)				
c. If passing is delayed for a few moments, might con- ditions improve?				
<b>y</b>				344_

OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-65
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	N	OTES	
•Lane markings change.	TSG - I-F-41		
●Traffic thins out#			•
<ul><li>Road configuration improves (e.g., from curves to straight).</li></ul>			
may be necessary to execute a "running pass."			
in how a "running pass" works.			
elay pulling into left lane.			
uild up speed in the right lane; activate turn signal.		;	
all out and pass at a higher rate of speed.		e B e	
mplete pass normally.	de est	è	
rainees determine advantages and disadvantages.	n .	, á	
vantages: Time in left (oncoming traffic) lane is reduced.			
sadvantages: If EV operator decides not to pass, EV will following too closelya dangerous situation until rectied.	* END OF M	DDULE	



OPERATION			UNIT PAGE	I-F-66
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	,		NOTES	
WAY OPERATION	* *	* BEGI	N MODUL	E 8 * * *
term expressway as used here includes interstates, free- s, turnpikes, or any other type of limited-access multi- e highway.	TSG -	I-F-42		Υ
h of expressway operation is routine, requiring little or no ision making.			1,6	•
iving on long stretches of flat, straight road often re- ires the operator to make a special effort to stay alert.	,	v		
ering and exiting expressways are maneuvers that place a demand on the operator to make fast, accurate decisions rapid succession.				
ving at the speed limit requires constant awareness of the d and traffic environment.				
g and Exiting Expressways				^
verleaf intersections can be one of the biggest problems n entering or exiting expressways (see illustration on the t page).			r V	v
e group of cars is slowing to exit while another group is celerating to enter.				
e two groups must cross in the right-most lane.	,			
s ·				
<			,	
		_		348

UNIT OPERATION I-F-67 **PAGE** INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES NOTES TSG - I-F-43 PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 17 DECELERATING EXIT ACCELERATING ering an expressway. When on the entry ramp, stay well behind the vehicle ahead. Be prepared to stop should the vehicle in front come to a sudden stop due to traffic conditions. While on the ramp, activate left-turn signal. Before entering traffic, watch the traffic for a gap that is large enough to permit entry.



	OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-68
1	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		VOTES	
•Ca	r ahead may stop while EV operator is looking back.	TSG - I-F-44		
Adj	ust speed for merging into the selected gap.	•		ı
•Tr	y to avoid coming to a complete stop, if possible.			
•Ad	justing speed, even slowing greatly, is much safer.			ì
ine .	at if there is no acceleration lane, or if the accelera- is very short, a "Yield" sign will probably be at the e the ramp joins the road.	•	, ·	
Yie	ld signs.			
	the trainees to explain what a "Yield" sign means. Be rainees are clear on the correct definition.	·		
to	Yield sign requires the right-of-way to be given (come a full stop, if necessary) to any traffic that is use enough to be a hazard.	·		
of	e Yield sign does not necessarily require a full stop ten slowing down will be sufficient to allow any traf- c which could be a hazard to pass.			
	Yield sign at an expressway entrance should cue the opator to the following:	i.		
	•The expressway probably has a short acceleration lane or no acceleration lane.	,		
	•The driver behind the EV may not be alert to the fact that the EV may come to a complete stop.			
tra	ainees what can be done to avoid being rear-ended.			
			•	

OPERATION			UNIT PAGE	I-F-69
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT / PRESE	NTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
eck rear-view mirror frequently	•	TSG - I-	÷-44	
ake gradually to allow following ssible to slow.	g driver as much time as		•	
p brakes so brake lights flash	on and off.			
correct lane well in advance of	rtant to position the EV f the exit.	in	بر	
If lanes must be changed to post ramp, move over one lane at a seach time.	sition the EV for the ex time, making sure to sig	it nal		,
If the same traffic lane is use acceleration, the operator may quickly to get through and onto	have to slow or acceler	and ate		
Once in the deceleration lane of tention to exit.	or exit lane, signal in-			
Begin decelerating.	•			
Once on the ramp, make sure specommended speed.	eed does not exceed the	re-		*
•Because they are often curved exit ramps will generally be 2 peed.	and narrow, the speed on 20 to 30 mph below highw	n ay		
<ul> <li>Check speedometer. After traveries often think they are greally are.</li> </ul>	reling at high speed, going much slower than th	ney		·
	•		,	
3	0		• .	354

OPERATION			UNIT PAGE	I-F-70	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELI	NES	NOTES			
view of entry/exit considerations.		TSG - I-F-44	÷		
ss each key point on transparency 18 (Figure I	-9).	TSG I-F-45	V	•	
ransparency 18 (Figure I-9):		PRESENT TRANS	SPARENCY	' 18	
•Signal intentions in advance, for entry and	exit.				
•Accele ite or decelerate in proper lane.					
•Watch speed on exit ramps:				,	
<ul><li>Many exit ramps are tight or changing r curves. OBSERVE CAUTIONARY RAMP SPEEDS</li></ul>	adius .	-			
◆Check speedometer; after traveling at h it is difficult to judge slow speeds.	ighway speeds,				
s the situation illustrated on page I-F-72.		TSG - I-F-46			
•	·, / · ·		. •		
•					
			•		
				. Abo	
				356	
		<u> </u>	_		

### OPERATION

UNIT PAGE I - F - 72

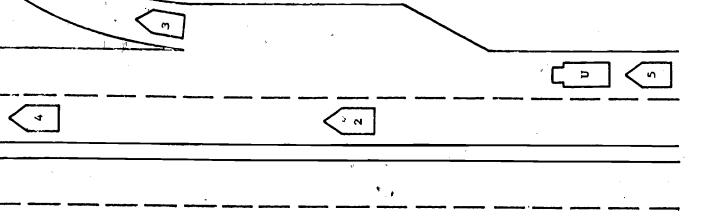
## DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

You are driving the EV marked "U." You want to leave the expressway at this exit

- a. Circle the main things you should be observing.
- b. How would you communicate that you want to leave the expressway?

#### Answer:

- a. Car No. 3, because it is in your path; Car No. 2, because it could suddenly move toward the exit; Car No. 5, because it is close behind you.
- Communicate by putting on your right turn signal and pulling into the deceleration lane as soon as possible.



360



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-73
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES *		NOTES	<u> </u>
the trainees a few minutes to read over the tips for driving sively (A-E). Then go over each point and encourage dison. Be sure to emphasize the importance of maintaining at a two-second following distance on expressways.  If the high-speed roads in America have been so well designed ilt that it is safer to travel at high speed on these roads, t low speed on less modern roads. Some hints for safer g:  Ok far ahead. Keep in mind that stopping distance at 55 mph over 300 feet (for sedans).  Operator should learn to spot potential trouble as early as possible.	TSG - I-F-47	NOTES .	
Watch for brake lights or a puff of dust or any other sign of trouble ahead.  The earlier the EV operator can begin to react to trouble, the more likely it is that trouble can be avoided.  tch.EV's speed to the cars around. Don't go over the limit, t don't go too slow either. Both can be dangerous.  t away from the "pack." When a cluster of cars goes down to highway together, each driver depends on all of the others drive carefully. Defensive driving means assuming the rest about the others on the road, and being ready for anying. If a cluster of cars is ahead, stay behind until it eaks up. If a cluster of cars comes up from behind, slow we enough to let them go by.			
36 <b>1</b> ,			362



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-74	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES,		1
e mirrors every few seconds. The EV operator needs to be are of all vehicles surrounding the EV.	TSG - ,I-F-47			]
gnal lane changes well in advance. Change lanes only when re the other lane is clear. Remember, turn signals do not ant the right to move over. Some drivers act as if they did.	TSG - I-F-48			
erations: Expressway Operation in the Emergency Mode			~ •	
	·	•		
e of lights and siren.				2
Avoid use of emergency signaling equipment on entrance ramps.				
•Motorists will become confused. Should they move rightinto the EV's entrance lane?	,			
a. Make a normal entry.				1
<ul> <li>Assess traffic-flow conditions and choose lane for emergency run or high-speed operation before activat- ing lights and siren.</li> </ul>				1
Avoid weaving from lane to lane with lights and siren on.			,	1
<ul> <li>Again, motorists can become confused. They will tend to pull right; perhaps into the EV's path.</li> </ul>				
. Motorists may be unaware that EV is in emergency mode if:				
a. EV is traveling fast (EV may be driving "ahead of siren").				
b. There is low sun or glare (may obliterate lights).				╛
€.				
				/

OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I - F - 75
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	· [
ltway: A continuous-loop freeway or expressway, generally rrounding a large, metropolitan area.	TSG - I-F-48		
mbarassingly, EV operators often go the wrong way on beltay.			ž.
eltways are often identified as inner/outer loop.			•
lear communications with dispatcher required!			. /
Determine proper entrance to use.	· ·		1
Determine if destination is <u>East or West (North or South)</u> of a given exit.	TSG - I-F-49		<i>(</i> )
If accident, in East or Westbound (North or Southbound) traffic flow?		*(	
•What are the local conventions for designating direction on beltways? (e.g., When does West change to North?)			
cal expressways.		1	
ss local expressway configurations.	· .		
re there any local names used for expressways (e.g., "Parkay West")? Are the names misleading? (Does "Parkway West" efer to a direction on the expressway or to a section of the expressway?)	<i>i</i> ,	<b>4</b>	
e there any limited entrance/exit points (e.g., inter- anges where EV opera r could not get on <u>and</u> off in <u>both</u> rections)?			
e there places where turnabout can be made?			
nat are the best exits for emergency facilities (e.g., hostals)?		,	
re there rush hour pecularities (e.g., bottlenecks, changes lane usage)?	* * END OF	MODULE	8 • *
	,		366

UNIT OPERATION I-F-76 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES **NOTES** G AT HIGH SPEED \* \* BEGIN MODULE 9 \* \* \* verage in this, the final module in the Operation Unit, is TSG - 1-F-50 to operation of the EV in the emergency mode at speeds in of the limit. The techniques presented are useful at any however. In fact, they can (and should) be practiced at speeds (during low-traffic times) as part of an on-going for developing the necessary skill for applying them at **5e**ed. uction me emergencies may require high-speed EV operation. is greatly dependent on local policy. The following, howshould be noted for the trainees: n ambulance or rescue ver e with a stabilized patient board should NEVER trave, ver the posted limit. arge, heavy fire apparatus are especially difficult to conrol at high speed. Thus, operation at speeds over the posted imit requires a high degree of skill and sound judgment. is module provides knowledge and techniques needed for: Driving on curved and winding roads at the highest possible safe speed. Slowing down from high speed. primary rules are: the rules on the chalkboard. Circle "know" in rule 1. Don't try to negotiate a curve faster than you know you can Observe posted speed limits and allow for conditions which

make lower speeds necessary, i.e. wet pavement, ice, etc.

CHALKBOARI

	<u> </u>			
OPERATION	J		UNIT PÅGE	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENT	TATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
Avőid brake fade.		TSG -	1-F-50	
nd Limits Imposed by the Laws of	Physics			
urns, centrifugal force quadruple centrifugat force is high enough ow curve on the intended track.	es as speed doub (0.8g) vehicle	les. When cannot		
any curve, there is a maximum specurve successfully.	eed for travelin	g through TS	-51	
A				
. 50		PRESE	NT 'TRANSPAREN(	: CY 19a
A PER MOUE			•	, •
\$ 30				
10-				
0 40 80 20 180 TURN RADIUS-FT.	200 240			
			4	,
			•	



OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-78
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
ainees will be driving EVs with a high center of gravity hing other than a sedan or station wagon) indicate that the on the chart does not apply to those vehicles. A correct for those vehicles would be somewhat below (depending on the fic vehicle) but parallel, to the existing line.	TSG - I-F-51	· ·	•
is operator's job to control speed. If speed in a curve too great, physics will wind	•	•	·
he trainees:			
ow fast can a sedan go around a curve 120 feet in radius? Answer: about 40 mph.)			
ow fast around a city intersection with an effective radius f 50 feet? (Answer: about 24 mph.)			
in the Local Area	٠		· ·
in familiarity with all road conditions and layouts in the ea. EV operators hould look for			**
Bank of the curve.	i c	•	
•The road should slant down toward the inside of the curve.	Najarah		
•Some older roads are banked the opposite way.			
n to trainees the problems with roads having a high crown.	`	•	•
the bank of the curve to the effects of centrifugal force.	,		
			,
			372

**UNIT** I - F = 79 **OPERATION** PAGE NOTES TSG - I-F-52 PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 19b PROPER KIND WATCH OUT FOR THIS 0F KIND OF BANK ~ BANK Road surface. •Narrower? •Ruts, cracks? solid edges? Inange in surface material (e.g., toncrete to blacktop)? •Vehicles don't have nearly as much traction on blacktop as they have on concrete. •Bumpy roads reduce the amount of time tires are in contact with the road surface.



€ OPERATION UNIT I-F-80 PAGE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT / PRESENTATION SUIDELINES **NOTES** Curves leading to potentially dangerous situations: TSG - I-F-52 •Curves that crest hills. •Curves that lead to intersections. •Curves that lead to population pockets (towns, schools, factories, etc.). Curves having a decreasing radius. •Because of 1 and availability or restrictions, highway designers often lay out curves in a decreating radius pattern. •Such turn start out with a relatively large radius which tightens as the vehicle penetrates the curve. he trainees where they might commonly expect to find decreasadius curves. (Answer: entrypand exit ramps on expressways n older roads.) . PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 19c TSG - I-F THE RADIUS AT "B" IS MUCH SHORTER THANTHE RADIUS AT "A"



· .			•					
OPE	ERATION	:	ente (Miller anne e 1 de la seconda de la se	;	*	2	UNIT PAGE	I-F-81
INSTRUC	TIONAL CONTE	NT/PRESENTA	TION GUIDEL	INES '			NOTES	
-a. On dec	creasing-radi ast for the l	us curves, t ater (tight	he maximum er) portion	entry spe	ed is TS urve.	G - I-F-5	53	
curve	peed is too he, physics wissible.	igh for the 11 win, and	tighter po vehicle co	ortion of ontrol wil	the l <b>be</b>	4		, ·
by th point	easing-radius ne se <b>ri</b> es of t in the curv red track in	black, grea e where oth	sy tire tra er vehicles	cks at the	at 'l			· ·
b. When a should tire c	approaching a d select an a curve.	decreasing ppropriate	-radius cur entry speed	rve, opera	tor en-	4		
•You c know are	can't select the road con	an appropri figuration	ate speed, in advance.	unless you	u e	· ·	-	
es to be ab e speed.	practice neg (or other l	ate any cur , otiating cu	ve at higher	est possib	le 🧖			
plied at m <b>o</b>	es outlined o oderate speed fully under	s at first,	several pag until the	ges can be dynamics	,		<b>₩</b>	
n to traine in Part II ce.	ees that the I are design	practical <b>e</b> ed to provi	xercises th de the firs	nat will be it level of	e pre-	*		
377	in the second		•	•	\$	·		378

þ	OPERATION .	•	•		UNIT PAGE	I-F-82
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRES	ENTATION GUIDEL	INES		NOTES	
ues	for Negotiating Curves at	High Speed	"	TSG - I-F-	53	
whic	curve must be considered. the are critical when negoti	ating curves:				THE SHAPE STATE OF
Pro	oper speed and vehicle posi	tion for entry	to curve.	And the second	#.***.	
Mai	ntaining speed in curve.	ت د ا	<b>77</b>			4
	per speed and vehicle posi	tion for exit f	from the Arve.		•	
ry.		).	•	TSG - I-F-5	54 .	,
Bra ent	ke or decelerate to the preering the curve.	oper entry spee	ed <u>before</u> .	20% 20%	•	
●Fc	oper speed is different for er any curve, the entry speed entering the curve on the	ed can be incre	eased somewhat	] a	·	
CU *	rve.	6		* : 1		
Ent	er the curve as far to the	outside as pos	sible.		•	
cr	tering on the utside of the eases the radius of the tree radius, the faster the tree	ack for the EV.	The greater		٠.	
Beg	in turn as early as pos	le.	<b>.</b> ∶.			
•In	experienced drivers invariance before starting to corr	ably go "too de ner vehicle.	ep" into	• •		
ins	ablish an apex (when beging ide road edge (or center li entry point.	ning the turn) and ne) that can b	e seen from	? <u></u>	e Date is	•
<u>-</u>				100 Charles (100 CF) 14	May a	gian
				•	•	000



	-		**
_ OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-83
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NO.	TES	
•The apex is the point on the <u>inside</u> of curve where vehicle comes closest to road edge or center line.	TSG - I-F-54	•	
•Generally, the further along the curve the apex is, the better.			•
e trainees understand illustration. Key points:			i.
e assumed speed and the radius of vehicle track for both and B are identical.			
has started entry:		, ¥	
•Early.		1	.•
•On the high (out) side.			·
ex for A is further along the curve than apex for B.		•	
is going to have a serious accident.			•
	PRESENT TRANSPA	ARENCY	<b>2</b> 0
APEX FOR A			
APEX FOR B	4.00		**
		• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		138	

I-F-84

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-F-55

- B. In the curve.
  - 1. If the maximum safe speed for a curve has been attained, the EV will feel "comfortable". Experienced drivers say such vehicles are "in the grove." This feeling can only be learned by experience. Trainees will begin to develop this feeling in Part III of the course.
    - •The maximum "safe" speed for traveling any curve is not the maximum "possible" speed.
    - •At the maximum possible speed, the "feeling" will not be comfortable. It will feel as though the suspension is straining.
    - •The maximum possible speed is not safe. At that speed vehicle control becomes so critical that a relatively small event (e.g., some sand or gravel on the road) can cause complete loss of control.
  - 2. EV should be in the groove by the time the apex is reached.
    - •The EV's suspension is set for cornering in a constant radius turn.
    - •The EV is close to the inside edge of the curve.
- -Ask the trainees how they will know if they are going too fast and have missed the groove.
  - •Vehicle will be close to spinning out (again, detecting that point can only be learned with practice).
- -Ask the trainees what you do if you miss the groove.
  - •STAY OFF the accelerator and brake.

TITLE	OPERATION /	PAGE I-F-85	]
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	
	Scrubbing action of tires will slow vehicle.	TSC - I-F-55	
	•EV will have room to drift from inside to outside of curve.	3	
3.	Once in the groove, apply slight power in curve to maintain speed:		
	•Scrubbing action of tires will slow EV unless power is applied.		
	•Apply power carefully. Too much power can (1) result in loss of steering control or (2) cause rear wheels to spin and loose rear-end traction.	*	
4,.	Never try to gain speed beyond the established maximum safe speed for the curve.		
	•For most combinations of vehicle characteristics, road conditions, radius of curves, and speed, an increase of just 3 mph over the safe speed will cause complete loss of control.		
Exi	To another curve.		
	a. Keep it slow and steady.		
	b. Drift to farthest (outside) portion of lane.		
. <i>(</i>	If the radius for the next part of the curve is tighter (shorter than the radius being traveled by		
	the vehicle, operator must slow down before tighten- ing the EV's turning radius.		

ь				1	y U
UNIT TITLE	,	OPERATION		UNIT PAGE	I-F-86
T		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	,	VOTES	
		•If possible, let scrubbing action of tires do slowing down. Avoid hard braking if at all possible.	TSG - I-F-55		
	d.	Establish an apex for the next curve.			
2.		a straight.	,	17	3 - 3 - 3 - 3 - 3 - 3 - 3 - 3 - 3 - 3 -
	а.	Establish the widest (outside) position and the latest possible apex.	TSG - I-F-56		
	b.	Accelerate out of the curve after the apex has been reached.		•	
		•Proper exit from a curve to a straight is where good drivers gain time.	:	, de	B .
					9 n
Slowing	Fro	om High Speed			•
A. Brai When	king n sp	g distance increases dramatically with increased speed. peed is doubled, braking distance more then quadruples.	* .	, ,	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;
-The pu tances ping d	. 1	se of this chart is not to have trainees learn these dis- It is to show the relationship between speed and stop- ances.		,	
W. C. W.	•	Stopping Distance at High Speed	•	•	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
Spe	e <sub>e</sub> ed	in mph Distance in feet (Good brakes, dry concrete, sedan)		•	
•	4	40 • \ 149		٠	
		243	•	ı	, i
1		366	ļ.,	;	, <b>S</b>
	7	70 497	s	· ·	

708

, 80

"cover" the brake with right foot. Don't risk brake fade

-Emphasize that this is a controversial point. Left-foot braking is fractionally faster, but right-foot braking eliminates the

chance of inadvertantly jamming on the accelerator during a panic

stop, and reduces the likelihood of brake fade.

TSG - I-F-57

UNIT

PAGE

I-F-87-

. by riding the brake.

TITLE		OPERATION	, ·	UNIT PAGE	I-F-88	
		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES			
3.	Ιf	EV has disc brakes, to stop as fast as possible:	TSG - I-F-57		_	
,	a.	Always use a smooth braking motion.				
	b.	Apply maximum pressure short of locking the wheels.			,	
	с.	Keep the pressure on until the EV has slowed to the desired speed.				
х У ,		•Even with good disc brakes, excessive braking in this fashion can lead to brake fade. If pedal pressure must be increased to maintain constant rate of deceleration, brake fade may be occurring. EV operator should switch to the technique used for drum brakes.				
		•NOTE: Air brakes should not be pumped.				
4,	Ιf	EV has drum brakes, to stop as fast as possible:	a.			
	a.	Smooth braking action.			•	
	b.	Pumping the brakes is mandatory. The goal is to allow the brakes time to cool.		•	,	
	с.	Smooth, rapid pumping to the point just before the wheels lock is the best bet.		r		
	d.	The pumping action should be of sufficient duration and force to transfer the vehicle weight to the front wheels without locking up the wheels.				
•			,			

# Review Exercises

1. Write a brief description of the purpose of emergency signaling equipment.

The purpose of emergency signaling equipment is to inform traffic (and the public in general) of the presence of an emergency vehicle and thus, to aid in clearing a path for the EV.

- 2. Circle the letter in front of the statements that are correct:
  - (a) YOU are required to use emergency signaling equipment whenever any of the exemptions to the state law are exercised.
  - b. An ambulance with a patient aboard should use emergency signaling equipment at all times.
  - (c) At high speeds, it is possible to "out-run" the siren sound.
  - d When siren is on, it is a good idea to leave driver's window partly open.
  - e. It is especially important to turn the siren on at railroad crossings.
  - f. It is especially important to turn the sirent on at intersections.
- 3. When parallel parking on a slope, how should the vehicle's wheels be positioned?

  So that the wheels will hit the curb and prevent rolling, or so that the vehicle, cannot roll through traffic lanes.



OPERATION

UNIT PAGE

I-F-90

Sam (the operator) and Joe are in the control cab on a van ambulance. As Sam is backing out of a parking stall, a sudden jolt and a tinkling sound tell them they have hit something. Sam was monitoring the left outside mirror as well as the center rear view mirror and Joe was monitoring the right outside mirror. What more might have been done to avoid this accident?

Sam should have assigned Joe to direct the backing operation from the rear, outside

of the vehicle.

Briefly describe the provisions of the state statute that deals with motorists' responsibilities for clearing a path for emergency vehicles.

-Localize

Circle the letter in front of the statement which describes the best siren-use technique for negotiating through heavy or blocked traffic:

- a. Low-pitch (growl) constant siren.
  - No siren.
- c. High-pitch constant siren.
  - Intermittent siren.

Circle the number that represents the percentage of emergency vehicle accidents that occur at intersections.

35 percent

50 percent

65 percent

bac



- 8. Circle the letter in front of the method appropriate for checking traffic before crossing an intersection.
  - a. Look right, then left, then right again.
  - (b) Look left, then right, then left again.
  - c. Look left, then right.
  - d. Look right then left.
- 9. State which type of turn, a right or left, requires a larger gap in cross traffic. Explain your answer.

Left. Because traffic lanes must be crossed.

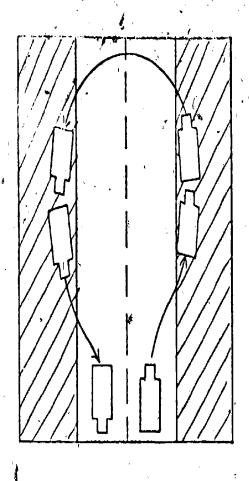
10. What is the safest type of turnabout?

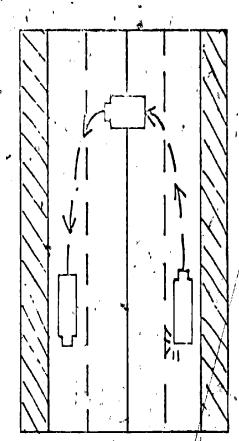
U-turn.

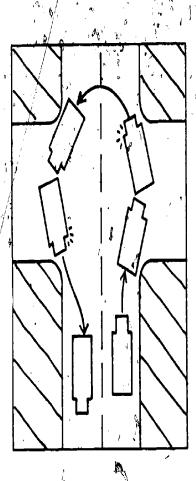


I-F-92

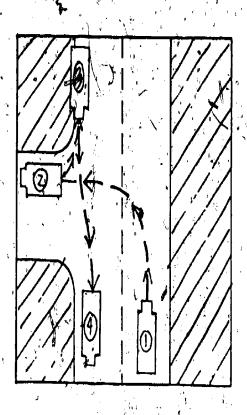
11. On the illustrations below, draw the correct path for a vehicle making U-turns.

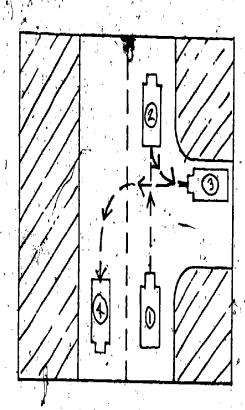






12. On the illustrations below, draw the correct path for a vehicle making a left and a right side-road turnabout.





13. Write a brief description of the two methods of estimating following distance.

Estimate car lengths: One car length for every 10 mph.

Two-second rule: Maintain a separation of at least two seconds between the EV and the vehicle being followed.

- 14. Of the items that appear below, some are cues to increase following distance. Circle the letter in front of those items.
  - (a) When following a vehicle that is being driven erratically.
  - b. When operating in the emergency mode.
  - (c) When weather conditions are poor.
  - d. When following a late-model sports car.
  - (e) When traveling on dataged road surfaces.
  - f, When traveling during rush hour.
  - g. When following another EV.
- 15. Below are several statements relating to following distance. Circle the letter in front of those that are correct.
  - (a) Following at the full stopping distance is unnecessary.
  - (b) Not all vehicles have the same stopping distance for a given speed.
  - (c) Vehicle condition can have an effect on stopping distance.
  - d. In general, large, heavy vehicles require less distance to stop.
  - e. Following distance should be decreased when traveling in the emergency mode.

16.	Name two types of road	configuration (n	not lan	e markings	or	signs)	that	indicate	it	is
	unsafe to pass.		.,							

- Hillcrests.

-Curves. -

-Intersections.

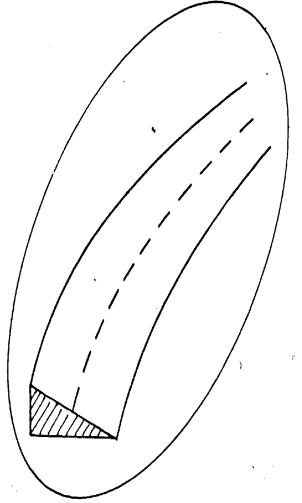
- 17. In a 45 mph zone, the EV is traveling 45 mph. Circle the letter in front of any of the following statements that indicate it is unsafe for the EV to pass.
  - (a) Four-lane divided highway, heavy traffic, in all lanes.
  - (b) Vehicle to be passed is traveling at the posted limit.
  - c. Two-lane road, broken center line, billcrest approximately 1/4 mile ahead.
  - d) Straight two-lane road, broken center line, small driveway intersecting to the left approximately one block ahead.
- 18. Write a brief definition of the meaning of a "Yield" sign.

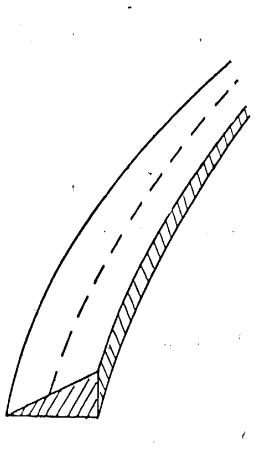
Yield sign requires that the right-of-way be given to any traffic that is close enough to be a hazard.

, Q

- 19. Select the siren-use technique most appropriate for entering and exiting expressways. Circle the letter in front of that item.
  - a. Intermittent siren.
  - b. Low-pitch (growl) siren.
  - (c) No siren.
  - d. High-pitch siren.

20. Circle the drawing below that illustrates a properly banked road.









For wor	each of the sentences relating to driving curved roads at high speed insert the $d(s)$ that best completes that sentence.
а.	On a decreasing radius curve the maximum possible entry speed is too <u>fast or high</u> for the later (tighter) portion of the curve.
Ь.	The <u>tighter</u> the curve, the slower the EV must go.
с.	Brake or decelerate to the proper entry speed <u>before</u> entering a curve.
d.	Entry speed for any curve can be increased somewhat by entering the curve on the <a href="high">high</a> side.
e.	On a decreasing radius curve, if the speed is too high for the tighter portion of the curve, vehicle control will be <u>lost or impossible</u> .
tha	the drawing below, the two vehicles are just beginning their turn. Circle the vehicle t has chosen the correct entry position for the curve. Give reasons why the position the vehicle you chose is correct.
On	the high or outside of the curve.
Tu.	rn was begun earlier.
· Ve	hicle B will end up in opposing  APEX FOR A



lanes of traffic.

### Description of Unit

This unit covers various adverse conditions (e.g., rainy weather) and includes specific precautions and procedures for driving in those conditions. This unit also provides a description of the more common "contingency situations" and the specific procedures that should be followed should such a contingency arise. The unit concludes with a module on appropriate procedures for pulling off the road.

#### Module 1 - 40-50 Minutes

- 1. INTRODUCTION. A brief overview of the unit content.
- 2. DRIVING IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS. Includes knowledge about, and procedures for, driving at night and driving in wet, snowy, icy, or foggy weather.

#### Module 2 - 40-50 Minutes

- 1. HANDLING CONTINGENCY SITUATIONS. Precautions to Help Prevent Contingencies. Presents the primary causes of contingency situations, and precautions that can be taken to minimize the likelihood of their occurrence.
- 2. General Techniques for Handling Contingencies. Presents general techniques, including evasive maneuvers, for handling many contingency situations.
- 3. What Would You Do?--Practice. Presents practice exercises for taking evasive actions to avoid an accident.
- 4. Handling Skids. Provides knowledge about skids in general and describes four basic types of skids (including hydroplaning). Procedures for correcting and/or avoiding skids are also presented.
- 5. Handling Other Specific Contingencies. This part of the module presents recommended procedures for handling specific contingencies (e.g., brake ailure).

### Description of Unit (Continued)

#### Module 3 - 30 Minutes

TITLE

1. IF YOU MUST PULL OFF THE ROAD. Describes procedures to be followed when an operator must pull off/the road unexpectedly, or when a vehicle is stopped on the road due to a malfunction. Includes use of lights to signal surrounding traffic, and use and placement of emergency warning devices (e.g., flares, reflectors).

#### Review Exercises - 20 Minutes

Written review questions on material presented in Modules 1, 2, and 3. Time estimate allows for discussion and explanation after the trainees have completed the exercises.



### Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees:

1. Given a list of statements relating to driving under adverse conditions, will be able to identify those that are correct.

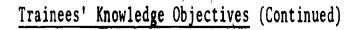
#### Module 2

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of several items, will be able to determine which of the items are impact-absorbing (if struck with a moving vehicle) and which are not.
- 2. Will be able to state the three primary steps that should be taken in controlling any type of skid.
- 3. Given several statements relating to off-road recovery, will be able to distinguish those that are correct from those that are not.
- 4. Given a list of vehicle malfunctions, will be able to describe the appropriate driver response(s) for handling the malfunction.







#### Module 3

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of several emergency vehicle light arrangements that could be used to warn other motorists, will be able to rate them in order of effectiveness.
- Given two drawings of a disabled vehicle (off-road and on-road), will be able to indicate proper placement of warning devices (e.g., flares, reflectors).

# Instructor Preparation Activities,

#### Module 1

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for I-G-11. Determine which of the adverse weather conditions discussed is most relevant for the class, given the terrain and climate in which the trainees will be working. You may want to consult the references and expand the material for any that are particularly relevant.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: None.

#### Module 2

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for I-G-22. If possible, find out what kind of braking systems are on the vehicles that the trainees will be driving on the job. Be prepared to present the information in class.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk. Overhead projector.

Materials: Transparency Nos. 21, 22, 23.





### Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

#### Module 3

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for I-G-43. Find out if there are local or departmental policies re: using lights as emergency warning devices that conflict with those presented in this module. If there are any such policies, be prepared to present them to the trainees in the class.
- 3. Obtain some flares or fusees and demonstrate their use (outdoors), if trainees will be using them on the job.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: Flares, fusees. Transparency Nos. 24 and 25.

### Additional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference no.: 39.



# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

#### INTRODUCTION

This unit is divided into three modules, Driving in Adverse Conditions, Handling Contingency Situations, and If You Must Pull Off the Road.

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 1 \* \* \*

- -Ask the trainees if they can think of the "adverse conditions" that might be covered in that part of the unit.
  - •Night driving.
  - •Weather conditions (leading to poor road condition, decreased traction, etc.).
  - •Poor visibility conditions (including smog, fog, mist, etc.).
- -Ask the trainees what they think the word "contingency" as used in this unit means.
  - •A sudden or unexpected occurrence or condition that is potentially dangerous.
- -Ask the trainees what kind of information the last module, "If you must pull off the road," might contain.
  - •Procedures and techniques for protecting the EV and the operator.
  - •Procedures for using emergency warning devices (e.g., flares, reflectors).

UNIT HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS	UNIT PAGE I-G-8
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
DRIVING IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS	TSG - I-G-4
Driving techniques must be adjusted for all adverse conditions:	•
A. Slow down.	i .
•Drive at a speed appropriate for conditions.	<b>a</b>
B. Increase following distance.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Night Driving	4
-Write the following statistics* on the chalkboard:	CHALKBOARD
<u>Day</u> <u>Night</u> Percentage of accidents 70 30	
Percentage of fatalities 53 47	
-Ask the trainees what conclusions they can draw from these statistics.  •Nearly one-half of all fatalities occur at night; but less	

- than one-third of all accidents occur at night.
- •Thus, a much higher proportion of night-time accidents result in fatalities.

UNIT
TITLE.

### HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS

UNIT
PAGE

I-G-9

INSTRUCTIONAL	CONTENT	/ PRESENTATION	GUIDELINES
			ACIDEPHIE

#### NOTES

- A. Causes of accidents (more likely to occur at night):
- TSG I-G-4
- 1. Less light to see by. Vision is restricted. Some facts to remember:
  - a. Night-vision varies considerably among persons.
  - b. Older people's night vision is not usually as good as younger people's.
  - c. Eye-straining activities (during the day) can reduce night-vision.
  - d. Sunglasses reduce eye-strain in bright sun, but they should NEVER be worn after sunset.
  - e. Bright flashes of light (lightning, high-beam glare) can cause momentary blindness.
- 2. Drunk drivers:

TSG - 1-G-5

- a. Search for indications of drunk drivers.
  - •Weaving across lanes.
  - •Delayed start at a stop sign or traffic light.
  - •Erratic speed.
- b. Be especially alert between 11 and 3.
- 3. Tired drivers:
  - a. Allow extra space and time for other drivers to react.
  - b. Don't be a tired driver-begin shift well rested.

	ITLE		INTIDITIO ONOGONE SITUATIONS		PAGE	1-0-10
			INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	ı	OTES	
В.	Usi	ng h	neadlights and high beams:	TSG - I-G-5		·
	1.	Hea	dlights:	٩		
		a.	Use headlights at all times between first signs of dusk and full daylight.			
			•Many drivers have developed the habit of putting on parking lights at dusk. This is a bad practice. As soon as daylight is noticeably diminished, headlights should be turned on.			
		b.	Keep headlights clean and properly aimed.			
		c.	Replace burned-out lights immediately.			•
	2.	Hig	h beams:	•		
		a.	Dim high beams within 500 feet of approaching vehicle.			
	·	b.	Dim high beams within 300 feet of overtaking or following other vehicles.			
	1	C.	Avoid high beams on right curvesthey tend to blind the oncoming driver.	TSG - I-G-6		
		d.	Don't stare directly into high beams. Guide the vehicle by using the right edge of the road.	•		
			•Flicking high beams up and down to signal a motorist to lower his beams can be dangerous; it can momentarily blind the other driver.		i	
С.	Tip	s to	improve visibility at night:			'
	1.	Kee	p windshield clean, inside and out.			



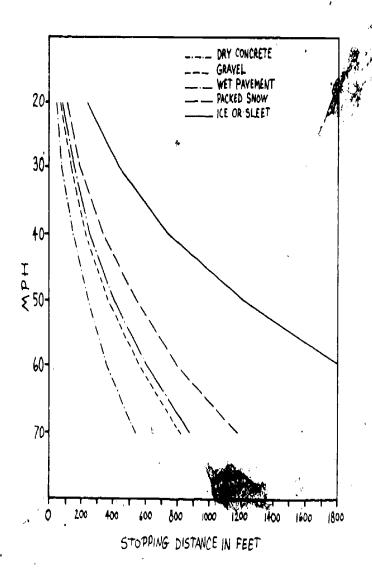
		ı		
UNIT TITLE	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS		UNIT PAGE	I-G-11
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
ř. 1	•Cigarette smoke builds a film on the inside of windows.	TSG - I-G-6	MOIES	
· .	•Dirty windshields make lights "sparkle." The pupils continuously expand and contract, causing eyestrate and headaches.			
2.	Keep instrument panel lights dim.			
3.	Slow considerably on curves or when turning.			
	•Headlights light up less of the roadway on curves or when turning.			·
4.	Keep eyes moving.			
,	•Moving eyes can pick out dim objects better than tightly focused eyes.			
Adverse	Weather Conditions			
The char stopping condition	t on the following page provides an indication of relative distances at different speeds and in different weather ons.			,
-Point o	out these facts to the trainees:			
•Sto	pping on wet pavement takes approximately twice the disce as stopping on dry pavement.			
•Sto	pping on ice or sleet takes about five times the distance stopping on dry pavement.	•		

•Coming to a complete stop, on ice or sleet from 30 mph requires as much distance as coming to a complete stop from 65 mph on dry pavement.

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 





-Ask the trainees what conclusions they can draw about following distances, based on the facts presented in the chart.

- •In any adverse weather condition, following distance MUST BE INCREASED.
- •Following distance should be increased proportionately to the severity of the prevailing weather condition.

UNIT
TITLE

## HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS

UNIT PAGE

I-G-13

		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
Α.	Wet	or rainy weather:	TSG - I-G-6		
;	1.	Approximately six times more people are killed on wet roads than on snowy and icy roads combined.*		ı	
	2.	When it first begins to rain, roads are especially slippery.	\ :		
i		•When it first starts to rain, water mixes with oil and dust to form a slippery mixture. This mixture will wash away in a while if the rain is hard and/or prolonged.			,
	3.	When possible, avoid making sudden moves with the steering wheel, brakes, or accelerator in rainy weather.			ART J
	4.	Driving through large areas of water can affect brake performance and the vehicle's electrical system. Precautions:	TSG - I-G-7		
		a. Slow down <u>before</u> hitting water.			
		b. Turn wipers on <u>before</u> hitting water.			
		c. Tap brakes as you exit.			
		•If vehicle pulls to one side, make several light brake applications to help dry the brakes.		•	
po .	5.	Double-check mirrors; rain on rear window or mirrors can distort or obliterate images.	TSG - I-G-8	ţ	
В.		ter Driving (including sleet, freezing rain, packed snow, ice).			
		ese conditions are especially hazardous. Sometimes loss of ntrol due to,skidding cannot be prevented.			
*39	5				

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

1. Advance preparation:

- a. Engine tuned.
- b. Heater/defroster in good working order.
- c. Battery charged.
- d. Emergency weather equipment.
  - •Chains.
  - •Shovel.
  - •Sand.
- e. Snow tires and/or chains.
  - •Snow tires are good; studded tires (if legal) are better; chains are best.
- f. Brakes adjusted.
- -Emphasize the importance of evenly adjusted brakes. Ask the trainees what might happen on slippery roads if the brakes pulled to one side.
  - •Skidding and loss of control could result.
  - 2. Tips for driving on ice and snow:
    - a. Stay aware of temperature. "Wet" ice and freezing rain are the most treacherous of all driving conditions.
      - •Wet ice and freezing rain occur when the temperature hovers around the freezing point (28°F to 40°F).

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 

- •Bridges freeze several degrees before road surface.
- b. Don't make any sudden moves with the steering wheel, brakes, or accelerator unless absolutely necessary.
- -Tell the trainees that the procedures for correcting skids will be covered in the <u>Contingency</u> portion of this unit.
- C. Poor visibility conditions, including fog, mist, smog, etc.
  - 1. Drive slowly, but keep moving.
  - 2. Turn lights (low beams only) and wipers on.
  - 3. Use four-way flashers if traveling 15 mph or more below speed limit.
  - 4. Watch for cars ahead that are moving very slowly.
  - 5. Watch the rear-view mirror carefully.
  - 6. Avoid decelerating suddenly.
  - 7. If you must pull off the road, use four-way flashers.
  - 8. Do not pass.
  - 9. Use defroster to minimize fogging on inside of window.
- -Point out to the trainees that patches of fog, etc., are extra hazardous.
  - •Occurrence of patches of fog and their density are unpredictable.
  - •Vehicles ahead entering a patch of heavy fog may brake hard and suddenly.

•

TSG - I-G-9

TSG - I-G-8

\* \* END OF MODULE 1 \*

#### HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS

UNIT PAGE

I-G-16

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

### HANDLING CONTINGENCY SITUATIONS

- \* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 2 \* \* \*
- A. Contingency situations can arise at any time. When they arise, normal traffic flow may be suddenly interrupted and the safety of all persons in the general area diminished.

TSG - I-G-10

- B. It is a good policy to be familiar with the contingency situations that occur most often, and to understand the actions that can be taken to minimize the likelihood of death of injury.
- C. The four primary causes of contingency situations:
- -Ask the trainees if they can figure out what the four primary causes might be:
  - •Vehicle malfunction or failure.
  - •A sudden change or deterioration in the road.
  - •The appearance of an obstacle in the roadway.
  - •DRIVER ERROR; clearly a contributing factor in most accidents.

# Precautions to Help Prent Contingencies

This section addresses precautions the operator can take to minimize the chances of a contingency occurring.

- A. Vehicle malfunction or failure:
  - 1. Inspect the EV at the beginning of every shift.

INSTRUCTIONAL	CONTENT	/PRESENTATION	GUIDELINES

NOTES

- 2. Correct/repair malfunctions/problems promptly.
- TSG I-G-11

- 3. Monitor to detect:
  - a. Noises.
    - •Clunks in steering.
    - •Dragging muffler.
    - •Squealing brakes.
  - b. New or changed vibrations.
    - •Alignment.
    - •Worn bearings.
  - c. Odors.
    - •Brake linings.
    - •Gas leakage.
    - •Fire.
  - d. Changes in handling characteristics.
    - •Too much play in steering.
    - •EV pulls to one side when braking.
    - •Brakes grab.
- B. A sudden change or deterioration in the road (weather, damage, construction, etc.).

### HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS

UNIT

T	TLE		HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS	,	,	PAGE	I-G-18
			INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUID	ELINES	,	NOTĘS ,	<del> </del>
	1.	Rei	main alert.		TSG - I-G-11		*
	2.	Sca	an well ahad.		, i		
	3.	Loc	ok for cues.		TSG - I-G-12	۵	
,		•Co	onstruction signs.				
		•S]	kid marks on the road surface.				
'	4.	Kno	ow the area! .				
		•W}	hich roads become slippery when wet.			v	•
		•W}	hich roads are in poor repair, etc.		·	,	
		•W}	hich roads have tight (decreasing radius	s) curves.	i	•	
n J•	The tri	app ans,	pearance of an obstacle in the roadway of other vehicles, etc.).	(includes pedes-			
	1.	Mai con	intain a safe speed; one which allows mantrol.	aximum vehicle			
	2.	Sea	arch for obvious cues.				
		•ıı₩	Watch Children" and "School" signs.	* *.			
		∙Не	eavy pedestrian traffic.				•
	3.	Lea	arn to spot subtle cues.	•			
		•T0	pys, bikes on lawns (even though no chil	dren are visible).			a
		∙Va	apor from exhaust of parked cars.	<b>\</b> .	•		
		●Ba	ack-up lights on parked cars.	,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		

HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATI	ONS		UNIT PAGE	I-G-19
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESEN	NTATION GUIDELINES	-	VOTES	١ .
ver error.	, **	TSG - I-G-12		•
Begin shift well-rested, with n	o unusual physical or men-			-
•Personal problems resulting in can affect driver's performance		•	,	
Remain alert.	,			
Avoid unnecessary risks.				
Don't panic.			Ü	
nder the most favorable conditioneen taken, contingencies will ar hey arise will minimize the risk sproperty damage:	rise. Knowing what to do		~	,
Techniques for Handling Conting	<u>encies</u>			
s of "possible" contingencies co may spend many hours driving (a it is probable that sooner or l ollowing are general techniques ny of the possible situations:	nd travel many thousands of ater a contingency will oc-		•	
sive steering, or a sudden or ex le's direction, is often used to s, or other obstacles. This act se it is too late to brake to a	avoid pedestrians, vehi- ion is usually taken be-	TSG - I-G-13.	,	
		,	ν .	418

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

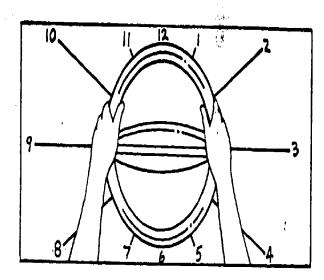
NOTES

•Animals in the roadway are often a problem--especially in rural or suburban areas. If a large animal (e.g., deer, bear) appears on the road it is usually best to avoid colliding with the animal--serious damage and injury often occur.

- •When small animals are in the roadway, however, it is often safer to collide with the animal rather than risk loss of control due to a sudden steering or braking maneuver.
- 1. Scan the roadway and nearby areas for escape routes. Consider:
  - a. Can the vehicle be safely steered off the right side of the road?
  - b. Off the left side of the road?
    - •The right side of the road is usually far safer than the left, although there are exceptions (e.g., divided highways with wide, level median).
  - c. Any obstacles on the roadside?
  - d. Any oncoming vehicles?
  - e. How stable is the road surface (e.g., gravel vs. concrete); is it likely to contribute to loss of control?
- 2. Scan especially carefully when approaching the crest of a hill, rounding a curve, and when approaching intersections.
  - •These situations minimize possible escape routes.
- 3. Evasive steering maneuvers are performed in the following way:

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES



- a. Hands should be at 3 and 9 o'clock on the steering wheel--this will allow the largest possible turn without moving the hands.
- TSG I-G-14
- •The 2 and 10 o'clock position is a little more comfortable, but the 3 and 9 o'clock position allows maximal directional control.
- b. Turn the steering wheel sharply in the direction of escape route.
- c. Countersteer as soon as vehicle is clear of obstacle.
- d. Although it may be necessary to brake somewhat, hard braking should be avoided.
  - •Hard braking can lock the wheels--locked wheels won't steer!
- e. Slow down and maintain vehicle control.

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

-Explain that the abruptness with which an evasive steering maneuver can be made <u>safely</u> depends, somewhat, on the type of vehicle.

- •Sedan--very abrupt maneuvers are possible unless wheels will hit curb, rut, etc.
- •Van-depending on type. Some may be "top heavy" and could roll if maneuver is excessively abrupt.
- •Large truck--steering ratio usually precludes excessively abrupt maneuver.
- -Explain that trainees will have a chance to practice evasive steering later. They will develop a "feel" for their EV's handling characteristics.
- B. Emergency braking. If there is enough room to stop, or if no escape route is available, emergency braking may be one way to avoid a collision or minimize the consequences. Goal: produce shortest possible stopping distance without locked wheels or loss of control. The best method for accomplishing this is:
  - 1. Hard pressure to brake pedal without locking wheels:
    - a. Quick, firm jabs.
    - b. Short, steady pressure; release; repeat.
  - 2. If wheels lock, RELEASE BRAKE PEDAL. Reapply with less pressure.
    - •The best braking method is somewhat dependant on whether the vehicle is equipped with drum or disc brakes.
- -If you have information about the kinds of brakes the trainees on-job EVs are equipped with, go into a little detail about braking methods for those particular vehicles.

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

- •Disc brakes ca take more sustained hard braking since they cool off more effectively and are less likely to fade.
- Rapid deceleration could cause a rear-end collision.
  - •In some cases a rear-end collision is preferable to the alternative (e.g., hitting a pedestrian). Each case must be judged independently.
- C. Evasive acceleration simply means a quick burst of speed. Can be used to avoid collision with side-approaching or merging vehicles.
  - •Drivers often don't think of this evasive maneuver.
  - •When a vehicle is approaching from the side or merging, increasing speed often can avoid collision.
- D. Unavoidable collisions. When collision is unavoidable, choose | TSG I-G-15 object to collide with. Considerations are:
  - 1. Choose course least likely to cause death or injury, or the course that will cause the fewest injuries.
  - 2. Head-on collisions are the most damaging in terms of both life and property.
    - a. Steer so that EV sideswipes or hits the other object at an angle.
    - b. Avoid hitting large, immobile objects in favor of "impact-absorbing" objects.

-Ask the trainees if they can think of some examples of impactabsorbing objects and immobile (nonimpact-absorbing objects). Have them help develop this list:

UNIT TITLE	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS	3	UNIT PAGE	I-G-24	
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES			NOTES		
•IMPAC	T-ABSORBING:	TSG - I-G-15	•		
•P	arked cars.				
●L <sub>(</sub>	ow bushes and shrubs.	,			
•Si	mall signs (e.g., stop sign, speed limit).	i		•	
•NON IM	PACT-ABSORBING:		,	**	
	oncrete bridge abutments (just about anything made f concrete).		,	•	
•B1	uildings.	ć ,			
<b>●</b> L;	arge trees.		•		
•U1	tility poles (also pose the hazard of power lines).	ľ			
What Would You Do?Practice		TSG - I-G-16			
	f the drawings in this practice section illustrates a ial accident.				
B. The th	ings that could be done to avoid an accident include:		•		
1. Am	ergency braking.	r	-		
2. Eva	asive steering.				
3. Eva	asive acceleration.	,			
4. Nó	action.				

most appropriate for each drawing. Present the correct answer, if

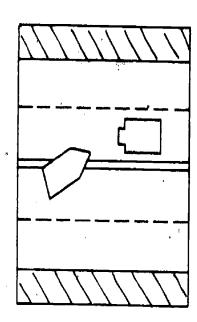
the class is unable to figure it out.

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

The EV is traveling on a four-lane road with no median. Gravel berms are on both sides of the road. The only other vehicle in the immediate vicinity is the car that appears to be out of control--it is crossing the center line and headed for the EV.

TSG - I-G-16



PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 21a

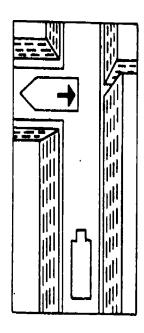
- •Evasive steering.
- •Steering to the right berm is probably best, since more traffic could be in the oncoming lanes. Also, the driver of the out-of-control vehicle may suddenly straighten out and pull back into his lane.

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

The EV is traveling at about 25 mph down a narrow, one-way alley. On either side of the alley are buildings set very close to the street. A large truck begins to back out of an intersecting alley to the left.

TSG - I-G-17



PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 21b

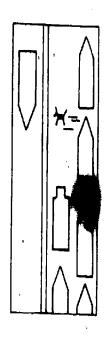
- Emergency braking and, perhaps, evasive steering.
- •The operator could sound his horn to alert the truck driver, but a collision is probably unavoidable. Evasive steering alone is inappropriate, since it would be unwise to strike large buildings—they are nonimpact—absorbing. The truck might stop, allowing the EV to steer around it.

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

The EV is traveling at about 30 mph on a busy, urban street. A car is behind the EV, following closely. Another car is approaching in the opposing lane of traffic. Parked cars are in the lane immediately to the EV's right. A small dog runs out into the roadway.

TSG - I-G 17



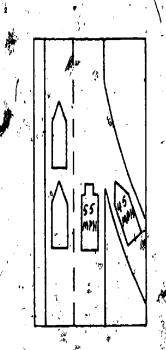
PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 21c

- •No action.
- •hither braking or steering will certainly cause an accident. There is some chance the animal will clear the EV if no action is taken.

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

The EV is traveling 55 mph in the right-most lane of a fourlane divided expressway. Two cars are in the left lane beside the EV. A car is about to enter the expressway from the entrance ramp; it is traveling approximately 45 mph. TSG - I-G-18



PRÉSENTATION SPARENCY 21d

- •Evasive acceleration.
- •Braking would probably increase the chances of collision with the merging car and would open the possibility of being rear-ended.
- •No action would probably result in a collision.

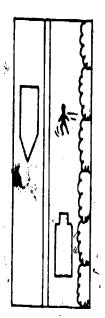
I-G-29-

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

. The EV is traveling on a two-lane rural road. There is a car in the opposing lane. On both sides of the road is a heavy growth of low bushes and shrubs. A small child runs out into the road.

TSG - I-6-18



•Evasive steering and emergency braking.

•Braking alone will not allow the operator to avoid hitting the child. Since the low bushes and shrubs are impact-absorbing, it would be wise to steer towards the right side of the road and collide with them at an angle.

PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 21e

Handling Škids

Skidding means loss of steering and braking control.

- The primary causes of all skids:
  - 1. A too-sudden change of speed or direction.
  - 2.. Any change of speed or direction under conditions of poor traction.
- B. 'To help regain control no matter what type of skid is occurring:
  - Stay OFF the brake.
  - Stay OFF the accelerator.

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDILIN

NOTES

3. Countersteer; steer in the direction to when the rear end steer ....

TSG - I-G-19

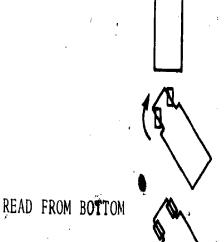
- a. Steer wheel does not have to be turned violently to corrects a skid.
  - •This is a common "panic" reaction, and further trouble often arises because the car tends to skid back and forth (fishtailing).
  - Once the wheel has been turned to countersteer, it may be necessary to immediately countersteer in the other direction.
- -Explain the illustration of countersteering that appears on the next page.

PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 22 TSG - I-G-20

Specific skids:

- 1. Braking skid. This kind of skid occurs when, due to sudden, hard brake pressure, one or more of the vehicle's wheels lock. If brakes are evenly adjusted, all wheels will lock at the same time.
  - •A good reason to keep brakes properly adjusted -- an allwhee locked skid is easier to control.
  - •Regardless of how many wheels lock, or how evenly, steering control will be lost. A WHEEL THAT IS NOT. TURNING CANNOT BE STEERED
  - a. If all wheels lock evenly or if just the front wheels lock, the vehicle will move straight ahead, unless influenced by some other force (e.g., a dip in the roa'd).

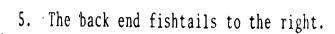
TS 1-G-21



7. Steering control is reestablished.

 $r_i$ 

6. To control fishtailing in the apposite direction, you'd countersteer right to help you get back on course.



- The vehicle is back on course.
- 3. You'd steer left, in the direction you want the vehicle to go relative to the way it facing.
- 2. The book end of the vehicle skids around to the left (the vehicle is still moving forward at an angle).
- 1. The vehicle is going straight.

471

472



		1	
UNIT	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS		1 1-1:43/
ή · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	
b.	If just the rear wheels lock, their reduced traction will cause them to move forward faster than the front wheels.	TSG - I-G-21	
	The vehicle my spin 180° (depending on speed, road surface, etc.). The vehicle may actually end up traveling in the opposite direction.		, , , ,
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDEENES  b. If just the rear wheels lock, their reduced traction will cause them to move forward faster than the front wheels.  The vehicle may spin 180° (depending on speed, road surface, etc.). The vehicle may actually end up traveling in the opposite direction.  c. Actions to take if a braking skid occurs:  1) Release brakes immediately; it should then be possible to steer.  Releasing the brakes allow the wheels to turn.  2) If braking is still necessary (to reduce speed or avoid an obstacle), apply with less pressure so that wheels don't lock again.  Ask the trainees to link of some examples of a situation where a braking skim night occur. Some examples are:  Hard braking on wet, snowy, icy, or debris covered roads.  Hard braking at high speed.  2. Power skid. This kind of skid occurs due to sudden, hard acceleration.  Since power is delivered only to the rear wheels, sudden in though the cause is different, a power skid is very			
	1) Release brakes immediately; it should then be possible to steer.		
surface, etc.1. The vehicle may actually end up traveling in the opposite direction.  c. Actions to take if a braking skid occurs:  1) Release brakes immediately; it should then be possible to steer.  •Releasing the brakes allow the wheels to turn.  2) If braking is still necessary (to reduce speed or avoid an obstacle), apply with less pressure so			
	avoid an obstacle), apply with less pressure so		
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDETNES  b. If just the rear wheels lock, their reduced traction will cause them to move forward faster than the front wheels.  The vehicle may spin 180° (depending on speed, road surface, etc.). The vehicle may actually end up traveling in the opposite direction.  c. Actions to take if a braking skid occurs:  1) Release brakes immediately; it should then be possible to steer.  Releasing the brakes allow the wheels to turn.  2) If braking is still necessary (to reduce speed or avoid an obstacle), apply with less pressure so that wheels don't lock again.  -Ask the trainees to think of some examples of a situation where a braking skillinght occur. Some examples are:  Plant braking at high speed.  2. Power skid. This kind of skid occurs due to sudden, hard acceleration.  Since power is delivered only to the rear wheels, sudden acceleration can cause the rear wheels to lose traction.			
•Hard	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDETNES  b. If just the rear wheels lock, their reduced traction will cause them to move forward faster than the front wheels.  The vehicle my spin 180° (depending on speed, road surface, etc.). The vehicle may actually end up traveling in the opposite direction.  c. Actions to take if a braking skid occurs:  1) Release brakes immediately; it should then be possible to steer.  Releasing the brakes allow the wheels to turn.  2) If braking is still necessary (to reduce speed or avoid an obstacle), apply with less pressure so that wheels don't lock again.  Ask the trainees to link of some examples of a situation where a braking skid shight occur. Some examples are:  Hard braking at high speed.  2. Power skid. This kind of skid occurs due to sudden, hard acceleration.  Since power is delivered only to the rear wheels, sudden acceleration can cause the rear wheels to lose traction.  The though the cause is different, a power skid is very		
		, a	<b>*</b>
\	acceleration can cause the rear wheels to lose traction.		ngs.
			,



#### HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS

UNIT PAGE

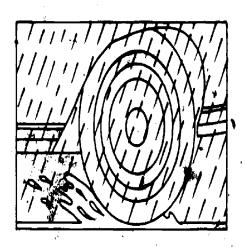
,I-G-34

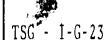
### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - I-G-22

- b. The rear end of the vehicle may try to overtake the front end, if just the rear wheels lose traction.
  - •This is sometimes called a "spinout."
- c. Actions to take if a cornering skid occurs:
  - 1) Ease off the accelerator.
  - 2) If the vehicle is spinning out, countersteer as space permits.
    - •This will align front and rear wheels and control' may be rained.
- Hydroplane skid. Hydroplaning occurs when the tire is moving too fast for the water on the road to escape (to flow around it or through the trend). A small wedge of water builds up in front of the tire and lifts it off the surface of the road.





PRESENT TRÁNSPARENCY 23a



UNIT TITLE	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS	4	UNIT PAGE	I-G-3
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRÉSENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
<b>a.</b>	The results of a hydroplane skid are difficult to predict:	TSG - I-G-23	* !•	,
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	As in all skids, there is loss of braking and/or steering control.		,	
	2) Unless the operator attempts to brake or steer (other than straight ahead) he may not know he is hydroplaning.		y	
b	Actions to take if a hydroplane skid occurs:			
	1) Ease off brake or accelerator.	#	,	
	2) Allow the vehicle to decelerate.			<b>*</b>
	•Since hydroplane skids are difficult to detect and control, the most effective thing an EV operator can do is to prevent them:		9	•
•	•Inspect tires regularly to ensure they have plenty of tread (to allow water to escape) and that pressure is correct.		7	
•	•Be alert for hydroplane-type conditionsif there is enough water on the road surface to cast reflections from trees or other cars, be especially cautious; slow down.			
,				
Handling Ot	her Specific Contingencies			
The occurre should be h	nces and conditions listed in this part of the unit andled according to the procedures outlined:		•	
479		1	٧	45:0

Apply parking brake in either of the following ways:

In a pumping manner--steady pressure, release, etc.

TITLE	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS		UNIT PAGE	I - G - 37
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT ADDRESS VALUE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PRO		2	
, b.	As hard as possible, without locking the wheels.	TSG - I-G-24		.5
•	Shortest distance. It is however, very difficult to			;
NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES  b. As hard as possible, without locking the wheels.  •Procedure 2.b will slow and stop the vehicle in the shortest distance. It is however, very difficult to avoid locking the wheels.  3. Pump brake pedal rapidly.  •This may build up some pressure in the brake lines and provide some braking force.  4. If these actions do not slow the vehicle, sound horn to alert traffic; activate four way flashers and/or emergency signaling devices; choose an impact-absorbing object to collide with, if necessary.  a. Avoid head-on collisions.  b. Try to sideswipe parked cars, shrubs, even a dirt hillside-always at an angle.  5. If vehicle has been slowed sufficiently, select an off-road stopping place.  a. If there is an upgrade within the assured clear distance ahead, stay on the road and allow the upgrade to further slow the vehicle, then select a path for leaving the roadway.  b. If no upgrade is within clear distance ahead, select the path for leaving the roadway that will minimize.				
•Th	is may build up some pressure in the brake lines and ovide some braking force.			
sig	naling devices; choose an impact-absorbing object to			*
a.	Avoid head-on collisions.	TSG - I-G-25		•
b.	Try to sideswipe parked cars, shrubs, even a dirt hillsidealways at an angle.		r	, *
5. If	vehicle has been slowed sufficiently, select an off- d stopping place.			
a.	further slow the vehicle, then select a nath for		2	
<b>b</b> .	the path for leaving the roadway that will minimize I			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
<b>*</b> .	ect a safe off-road stopping place.			
493	Lano,		,	

hands while in motion.

The operator should NEVER try to release it with his

UNIT TITLE HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS  INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES  a. Put vehicle in "neutral" gear. In vehicles without power steering and power brakes, turn engine off.  With the engine off, it will be more difficult to steer if EV has power steering.  Many models of EVs have steering wheel/ignition interlocks (ganti-theft). Do not turn off ignition if it will lack steering wheel.  If the vehicle has power-assisted brakes, do not pump them. Instead, apply steady pressure.  Pumping will exhaust power-assisted brakes' reserve capacity when engine is off.  Select a safe off-road stopping place and pull off.  Turn engine off if still running.  F. Visibility impaired (hood flies up, wiper or defroster failure).  If hood flies up, look for a gap at the bottom of the windshield.  If forward visibility is completely blocked, put head out side window to see forward.  Apply brakes moderately.  You could be rear-ended.  Continue to brake gradually and select an off-road stopping place.  Pull off the roadway and activate four-way flashers.				
		(	NOTES	
a, P	ut vehicle in "neutral" gear. In vehicles without power teering and power brakes, turn engine off.	TSG - 1-G-20	<u> </u>	
.!	With the engine off, it will be more difficult to steer if EV has power steering.			
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES  a. Put vehicle in "neutral" gear. In vehicles withou steering and power brakes, turn engine off.  . With the engine off, it will be more difficult to steer if EV has power steering.  . Many models of EVs have steering wheel/ignition interlocks (anti-theft). Do not turn off ignition it will lock steering wheel.  b. If the vehicle has power- assisted brakes, do not them. Instead, apply steady pressure.  . Pumping will exhaust power-assisted brakes' reservapacity when engine is off.  c. Select a safe off-road stopping place and pull off d. Turn engine off if still running.  F. Visibility impaired (hood flies up, wiper or defroster for windshield.  2. If forward visibility is completely blocked, put head side window to see forward.  3. Apply brakes moderately.  •You could be rear-ended.			,	4
b. 1	f the vehicle has power- assisted brakes, do not pump them. Instead, apply steady pressure.			,
•	Pumping will exhaust power-assisted brakes' reserve capacity when engine is off.		•	*
c) S	elect a safe off-road stopping place and pull off.	. •	ı	
1	1		· •-	•
F. <u>Visibil</u>	ity impaired (hood flies up, wiper or defroster failure)	·	•	
1. If	hood flies up, look for a gap at the hottom of the		, U	
2. If	forward visibility is completely blocked, put head out e window to see forward.	,	J v	
3. App	ly brakes moderately.		, (	,
•Yo	u could be rear-ended.			•
4. Con pin	tinue to brake gradually and select an off-road stop-	,	. ,	
5. Púl	l off the roadway and activate four-way flashers.	)		\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \

I-G-40

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

Wheel(s) off the road (off-road recovery). If at some time the TSG - I-G-27 EV's wheel(s) leave the road surface (intentionally or unintentionally), the operator will have to perform an off-road recovery. This can be dangerous unless performed properly. Correct procedure:

- · 1. Hold steering wheel firmly; steering may be difficult.
  - •If there is a significant difference between the level of the roadway and the shoulder, or if the composition of the roadway and the shoulder are significantly different the vehicle may pull to pne side.
  - 2. Check for traffic ahead and to the rear.
  - 3. Reduce speed by easing off the accelerator.
- 4. If brakes must be applied to reduce speed, brake VERY gradually.
  - •If shoulder is gravel or muddy, skidding is a strong possibility.
  - 5. Center vehicle over road edge.
  - 6. Activate appropriate turn signal.
  - 7. If the operator must avoid an obstacle, he should steer sharply toward the road, turning steering wheel about 90° while accelerating slightly.
- -Point out to the trainees that the sharp-turn recovery (7) is dangerous.
  - •This procedure should only be used to avoid a collision. Two dangers: skidding, and ending up in opposin lanes of traffic.



		P.	
UNIT	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS		IIT I-G-41
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOT	ES
	If the operator does not have to avoid an obstacle, he should scan the road edge to find the point at which there is the least distance between road edge and berm, turn the wheel gradually, and steer on at that point.	TSG - 1-G-27	
9.	As soon as the EV's <u>front</u> right wheel touches the road edge, countersteer to control lane position.		
H. <u>Dar</u>	nger signals from gauges and indicators on instrument panel.	· ),	,
e i Se	nenever a malfunction or danger signal appears, the EV op- cator should contact the dispatcher to send a back-up and/or ervice vehicle.	j	
•Re EV	equesting a back-up unit is of the UTMOST IMPORTANCE if the is enroute to an emergency when the malfunction occurs.	,	
1.,	Fuel gauge low:		
•	a. Continue to site if within range.	e de la companya de l	
<i>‡</i>	b. Consider the amount of fuel necessary for the return trip.	TSG - I-G-28	
2.	Charging system fails (battery not charging).	, á	
	a. Turn off any equipment that will drain battery.		•
	b. If the engine is stopped, it is unlikely it will restart.	,	
3.	Brake warning light comes on:	,	
	a. Stop immediately.		

•If there is complete brake failure use the procedure outlined in Brake Failure.

TITLE	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS	•	PAGE	I - G-42
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	1	OTES	
b.	Do not drive the vehicle until maintenance has been performed.	TSG - I-G-28	:	*
	hat the procedures listed below, if followed, will pro- EV and reduce the chances of a major vehicle malfunction.	•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
4. Oi	l pressure drops:			•
a.	Stop immediately.		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•
b.	Do not drive the vehicle until maintenance has been performed.	,		
5. En	gine temperature rises into danger zone (and remains).			
a.	Stop immediately.			
. b.	Do not drive the vehicle until maintenance has been performed.			
* *			1	
				·
		V		
1.			,	
,				•

\* \* END OF MODULE 2 \* \*

I-G-43

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

IF YOU MUST PULL OFF THE ROAD

Due to adverse weather conditions or a contingency situation, an EV operator may need to pull to the side, or off the road. In the worst case, the operator may be unable to get the vehicle entirely off the road (and out of the path of surrounding traffic). Whenever this situation arises, both the vehicle and the operator must be protected. The goal of "protecting the scene" is to provide visible, early warning to surrounding traffic and thus avoid a collision (or avoid causing a collision). Principles:

- A. Position of the vehicle is critical. The more likely a hazard it represents, the more critical the need for rapid, effective placement of warning devices.
  - •If the trainees, when on the job, will be working at a department with an established policy on this subject, it should be be presented. If that policy conflicts in any way with the material presented here, be sure to have the trainees write the correct policy in their study guides.
  - 1. MOST EFFECTIVE: Emergency warning devices such as triangular reflectors, flares, fusees, etc.
    - •Triangular or other reflectors are best-no fire hazard.
  - 2. OKAY: Overhead beacon, four-way flashers, and cab lights.
    - •Cab lights alone are not very effective. When used at night in conjunction with the beacon, however, they increase the overall amount of protection.
    - •Other motorists are-less likely to drive into the rear of a vehicle with cab lights on.

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 3 \* \*

TŠG - I-G-29

}		<u> </u>	
UNIT TITLE	HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS	UNIT PAGE	1-G-44
. ",	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	1
3. POO	TITLE INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	TSG - I-G-29	
ha	zard At night, tired motorists may tend to "follow"		
C. During	daylight:		
₩ Wa	rning devices, the operator should protect himself by		
D. In darl	iness:	TSQ#11-0500 / A	
be∖	positioned whenever the EV will be stopped for more		
ing	lefinite, warning devices should be positioned (whether		
Placing Fla	res or Other Emergency Warning Devices		0
stopped vel			

ERIC A

INSTRUCTIONAL	CONTENT	/ DDEACHTASIAN	01110
MOTIOCHONAL	CONTENT	/ Presentation	GUIDELINES

NOTES

-Point out to the trainees that the distances outlined here are guidelines, only. Actual distances must be based on the specific situation (e.g., terrain, visibility conditions).

TSG - I-G-30

- A. One-way roads (or divided expressways):
  - 1. Start four-way flashers before leaving the vehicle--cab lights on.
  - 2. Place a warning device just beside the vehicle, on the traffic side.
  - 3. Place a second device 100 to 200 feet to the rear of the vehicle, on the edge of the road. If the vehicle is actually on the roadway, the device should be placed in the middle of the lane.
  - 4. Place a third device approximately 300 feet to the rear of the vehicle, on the road edge (or in the lane if the EV is on the road).
    - •When walking quickly, a normal stride is a little more than two feet.

UNIT TITLE	UNIT TITLE HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATIONS  MSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES  TSG - 1-G-31  PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 24a  One-way flow of traffic. Disabled vehicle off-roadway.  PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 24b		
·	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	
	→ → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →		Y 24a
	Disabled vehicle off roadway.	PRESENT TRANSPARENC	Y 24b

•

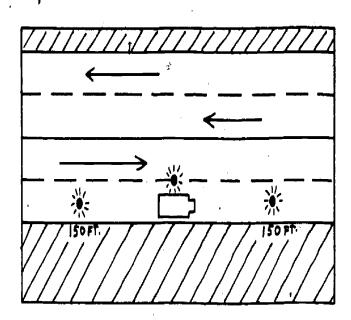
504



I-G-48

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES



TSG - I-G-33

PRESENT TRANSPARENCY 25b

Two-way flow of traffic. Disabled vehicle on roadway.

- C. Use of flares or fusees:
  - 1. Read directions accompanying the warning devices.
  - 2. The following can be used as general guidelines if no directions are present:
    - a. Do not light device until you are ready to put it down.
    - b. Pull the tab near the top of the device, to free the cap.
    - c. Strike the matchlike head of the flare against the strike surface on the inside of the cap; point the flare or fusee away from your body as you do this.
      - •The inside of the cap is similar to the strike surface on a box of matches.

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

- d. If flares with spiked ends are used and must be placed on the roadway:
  - TSG I-G-34

- 1) Push them between slabs of concrete.
- 2) Simply lay them on the road.
  - •A rock or other anchoring device can be placed to keep them from rolling.
- 3. Flares or fusees should NOT be used if there is evidence of the following:
  - a. Odor of gasoline.
  - b. Any fluid leakage.
    - •Most motor vehicle fluids are combustible.
  - c. Any possibility of fire.
- -Emphasize the danger of using flares or fusees if there is ANY possibility of fire.
  - •In these cases, the only safe warning devices are reflectors. The large, red-orange triangles are especially effective. Of course, the vehicle's lights (e.g., beacon, four-ways) can be used as well.
  - 4. Replace any warning devices that are used as soon as the EV returns to quarters.

507

\* \* END OF MODULE 3 \* \*

Rev	iew	Exer	cises

		Keview Exercises	•	/
1.	Ind	icate which of the following statements are true and which are false.	T	F
	a.	More than half of all fatal accidents occur at night.	X	
ı	b.	Generally, older people's eyes function just as well as younger people's eyes when it comes to night driving.		<u> </u>
	С.	It is a good idea to have instrument panel lights as bright as possible at night.		<u> </u>
	d.	The roadway is usually most slippery when it has just begun to rain.	X	
1	<b>e.</b> ,	It is a good idea to go through large areas of water as quickly as possible, so that the vehicle is exposed to its effects for the shortest possible time.	•	<u> </u>
	f.	The farther below freezing the temperature drops, the more hazardous the ice or snow on the road will be.		<u> </u>
,	g.	When driving in fog avoid the use of high beams.	<u> </u>	<del></del>
2.	and	e of the items listed below are less likely than the others to cause p property damage if struck in a collision because they are <u>impact-absorbed</u> letters beside the items that are <u>impact-absorbing</u> .	ersonal rbing.	injury Circle
	(a)	Road sign (speed limit, stop sign)		
	b. <b>'</b>	Telephone pole		_
	0	Low bushes and shrubs		
_		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		

A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR						
HANDLING UNUSUAL SITUATION	DNS			UNIT		1
*						
Parked cars						<u> </u>
Concrete bridge abutment .	ţ.			•		
Chain-link fence	•		•			
Full-size oak tree	•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		•		
t are the three primary steps t	hat can he take	n to holm			•	
-Stay off brake -Stay off accelerator -Countersteer			<b>. .</b> .	<b>u</b> .		
cate which of the following sta ch are false.	atements relatin	ng to off-road	recovery	are true	, and	
If your wheels go off the road pump-braking is a good way to r	edge while trav	veling at high	speed,	T	F.	
5 800 may 60 1	-					
If possible, it is a good idea before attempting to steer back	onto the roadw	ay.		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	
If possible, it is a good idea before attempting to steer back  If you do not have time to dece ahead) you can steer the vehicle	lerate (because	ay.	•	<u> </u>	X	:
If possible, it is a good idea before attempting to steer back If you do not have time to dece ahead) you can steer the vehicl (about 90°) to effect an off-ro	lerate (because e sharply towar ad recovery.	of an obstacle d the road edge		<u>x</u>	<u>X</u>	:
If possible, it is a good idea before attempting to steer back	lerate (because e sharply towar ad recovery.  o the road at t road edge and	of an obstacled the road edge the help where berm.	there		X	

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

of road without sudden braking.



a.	Brake failure: Shift to lowest gear; apply parking brake; avoid locking wheels;
	pump brake pedal rapidly.
	pump blake pedal lapidig.
b.	Accelerator sticks: Attempt to release using tip of foot; if unsuccessful, put
	vehicle in neutral and turn engine off.
с.	Engine temperature rises into danger zone: <u>Stop vehicle immediately; do not driv</u>
	until maintenance has been performed.
, ,	
d.	Transmission failure: Select off-road stopping place; brake gradually to a stop.
e.	Blowout: Do not brake or accelerate; maintain steering control (may be difficult

6. When the EV is at the side of the road, EV operators could use any one or a combination of the following to warn/alert motorists. On the list below, mark the most effective way with the letter "M" and mark the least effective way with the letter "L".

- Headlights

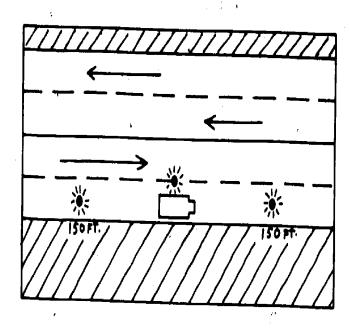
\_\_\_ Four-way flashers

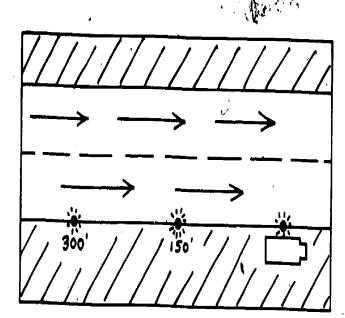
M Triangles'

\_\_\_ Overhead beacon

L Parking lights

7. On the two drawings below, indicate with Xs the correct placement of warning devices (e.g., reflectors, flares).





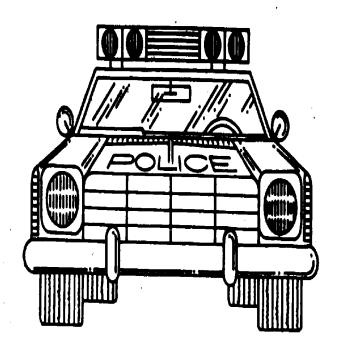
On-road, two-way traffic flow.

Off-road, divided highway.

# Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles

PART II: Specialized Unit
Operation of Law Enforcement Vehicles

INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS



517

518



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ART II - OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEM	EN.	ľ	/El	11(	TI	:5										,					
Description of Unit	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	. II-P-
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives .	•	•				•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	. II-P-
Instructor Preparation Activities	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•				• ,	•	•	•	. II-P-
Introduction	•				•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•		•	. II-P-0
Communications	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•					•	•	. II-P-
Pursuit Driving '	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•			• 1	. II-P-9
Pursuit Driving Techniques																					
Making a Traffic Stop	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•		•		•		II-P-20
Emergency Escort of Another Veh	icl	le	•	•				•	•	•	•	•		•.	•		•		•	•	II-P-23
Review Exercises			•					•											•		II-P-26



#### Description of Unit

This unit covers the areas of emergency vehicle operation that are especially relevant to operators of law enforcement vehicles.

#### Module 1 - 30-45 Minutes

- 1. INTRODUCTION. Some background on the law-enforcement traffic-accident picture and a brief overview of unit content.
- 2. COMMUNICATIONS. .Brief review of some of the points covered in Unit C, and presentation of information and techniques specifically relevant to law enforcement vehicle operators.
- 3. PURSUIT DRIVING. The Risks of Pursuit. Background on the kinds of situations and conditions that contribute to the risk of pursuit.
- 4. Types of Pursuit. Information about the different types of violators, hazardous and non-hazardous.
- 5. Using Lights and Siren in Pursuit. Information about the legal requirements for lights and siren in pursuit, as well as techniques for use of lights and siren during pursuit.
- 6. When Should Pursuit be Abandoned? General guidelines, which should incorporate local or departmental policy (see instructor preparation activities) that can help a law enforcement officer decide when the risks of pursuit outweigh the possible good.

#### Module 2 - 30-45 Minutes

1. PURSUIT DRIVING TECHNIQUES. Specific techniques and procedures that will contribute to controlled, safe pursuit driving.

#### Description of Unit (Continued)

- 2. MAKING A TRAFFIC STOP. Procedures and techniques for making a <u>routine</u> traffic stop. Procedures for making hazardous-violator stops are NOT included, but can be presented according to local or departmental policy.
- 3. If the EV Overshoots the Violator's Vehicle. Procedures for dealing with the situation of the officer being forced to pull in front of the violator's vehicle.
- 4. EMERGENCY ESCORT OF ANOTHER VEHICLE. Guidelines for determining if escort should be provided, including some possible alternatives to providing escort.
- 5. How to Escort. Procedures and techniques for handling an escort situation.

#### Review Exercises - 20-30 Minutes

Written review questions on the material presented in this unit. Time estimate allows for explanation and discussion after the trainees have completed the exercises.



POL

#### Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

#### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Will be able to list three items of identifying data that should be transmitted to the dispatcher whenever a suspect or violator is spotted.
- 2. Will be able to write a brief description of the effects of "tunnel vision" and "adrenalin kick."
- 3. Given a listing of several types of offenders, will be able to identify which fall into the hazardous violator group.
- 4. Will be able to state two reasons why a pursuit might be abandoned.

#### Module 2

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of several statements about pursuit driving, will be able to select those which are correct.
- 2. Given a drawing illustrating several police vehicles and a violator's vehicle, will be able to select the police vehicle that is in the correct position for making a routine traffic stop.
- 3. Will be able to state whether or not emergency escort of another vehicle is permitted in the department in which they will be working. If escort is permitted, the trainees will state under what circumstances it is permitted.
- 4. Given a description of two situations, will be able to indicate whether or not it would be appropriate to provide escort, and explain why.

POL

 $\{i\}$ 

W



#### Instructor Preparation Activities

#### Module 1

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for II-P-15. Find out exactly what the state statutes say about using lights and siren in pursuit. Be prepared to present that information in class.
- 3. Preparation for II-P-16. Find out what the state laws say about use of high beams. Be prepared to present that information iniclass.
- 4. Preparation for II-P-16. If possible that in any copies of local or departmental policies re: pursuit and/or abandoning pursuit. Make enough copies for all trainees, and be prepared to pass them out and discuss them in class.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Macerials: Enough copies of any local or departmental policies re: pursuit for all trainees.

#### Module 2

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for II-P-24. Check to see if emergency escorting is permitted in the department in which the trainees will be working. If it is NOT permitted, do not present any of those materials.
- 3. Preparation for II-P-24. Check to see if the second point listed under C conflicts with local or departmental policy. If it does conflict, cross it out so that you will NOT present it to the class.

POL





## OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES

UNIT PAGE

II-P-5

## Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: None

#### Review Exercises

Question 7 does not include the answer because it is dependent on local departmental policy. If emergency escort is permitted write a brief description of the conditions.

## Additional Recource Documents:

Bibliography and reference nos.: 8, 9, 10, 13, 15, 21, 28, 32, 43, 44, 45, 61.

POL

528

#### OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES

UNIT PAGE

II-P-6

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 1

#### INTRODUCTION

-Lead a class discussion about the following items of information: TSG - II-P-2

- •The national police vehicle accident rate is 2.5 times as high (per vehicle mile) as the accident rate for other professional drivers (e.g., traveling salesmen).
- •Far more law enforcement officers are killed in traffic accidents than by gunshot wounds or other violent means.
- A. Most law enforcement officers spend approximately two-thirds of their on-duty time behind the wheel of a vehicle. It is therefore, critical that they have enough knowledge about the vehicle, and practice behind the wheel of a vehicle, to be able to make quick, accurate decisions when the need arises.
- B. The public depends on law enforcement officers to set an example. It is important that law enforcement officers, especially in times of stress, maintain control of themselves, their vehicles, and the situation.
- C. In this unit, material will be presented on topics that are of special importance to law enforcement officers. The topics include:
  - 1. Communications.
  - 2. Pursuit driving.
  - 3. Making a traffic stop.
  - 4. Emergency escort of another vehicle.

POL



UNIT TITLE	OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES								
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	T	PAGE	II-P-					
COMMUNICATI			VOTES	·					
rinciples ave a life	extent, the safety of the general public, as well as of the law enforcement officer, rests upon effective ons. Every officer should know the communications listed below and follow them without failthey could.	TSG - II-P-3	. (						
· Communic	cations should be as brief as possible, without sac-								
•It is i irrelev	mportant not to tie up the communications lines with	,		•					
Whenever should be center a	a suspect or violator is spotted, identifying data e transmitted to the dispatcher or communications t once.			r					
ask the tra	inees for examples of identifying data.								
	plate number, and/or	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·							
•Make, mo	odel, year, and color of vehicle.								
	of passengers.		# 4 / 1   1   1   2   2   3   3   3   3   3   3   3   3						
Descript	tion of violator (if possible).		* · ·						
•Any othe broken t	r identifying characteristics of the vehicle (e.g., aillight, dents).								
ell the tra mportant if	inees that the last three items become increasingly the license plate is not visible.								



#### OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES

UNIT PAGE

II-P-8

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES .

- C. Whenever an officer becomes engaged in a high-speed chase (pursuit) he should notify the dispatcher of his position, and keep the dispatcher abreast of his position as it changes.
- TSG II-P-3

- •This action could save the officer's life.
- •If there is a second officer present, he should conduct communications.
- -Point out the dangers of trying to drive at high speed while using one hand to operate the communications equipment.
  - •If the officer must conduct communications himself, he should pick a time when he is not likely to need both hands on the steering wheel to maintain control (e.g., on a straight stretch of road).

POL

-	_
	NIT TLL
	Į.

## OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES

UNIT PAGE

II-P-9

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

PURSUIT DRIVING

Almost all police departments have established policies or guidelines that deal with pursuit driving and the apprehension of suspects or violators. Sometimes these policies are not formally written down. A law enforcement officer who is new to his job must find out what local departmental policies are in effect. TSG - II-P-4

## The Risks of Pursuit Driving

- •Nearly 50 percent of all pursuit or high-speed chases end up with one or more of the vehicles involved in a collision-a very high percentage of these accidents involve loss of life.
- Pursuit driving, at best, is a risky business. Law enforcement officers should be aware of the factors that increase the risk.
- A. Speed represents the single greatest contributor to risk during pursuit driving. The greater the speed:
  - 1. The less time the driver has to identify hazards and take appropriate action.
  - 2. The longer the stopping distance,
  - 3. The greater the chance of skidding or rolling over on a
  - 4. The greater the danger in the event of a vehicle mal-
- -Discuss what the effects of a blowout at 80 mph might be.

<u>53</u>(

POL

537

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 

5. The greater the probability of personal injury and property damage in a collision.

6. The greater the force of impact in a collision.

- -Point out to the trainees:
  - •The average man walks at about 3 mph. If a man walks into a wall or a door, he can break his nose quite easily.
    - •Safety belts will reduce the number and the impact of invehicle collisions (e.g., head and windshield, chest and steering wheel, knees and instrument panel).
- The Violator, attempting to flee from a police officer, regardless of the violation or suspected violation, is committing a crime. People who are fleeing from police act in unpredictable (and unsafe) ways:

TSG - II-P-5

TSG - II-P-4

- 1. A fleeing violator often has no concern for his own sæfety.
  - •Or, consequently, for the safety of other persons.
- 2. He will perform dangerous maneuvers if he thinks they will enhance his chances of escape.
- -Ask the trainees what kind of dangerous maneuvers a fleeing violator might try. Include at least the following:
  - •He may delibertly run people off the road.
  - •He may delibertly attempt to cause the pursuing officer to have a collision.

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 

- C. Other Motorists often react unpredictably to the sound of sirens or to confusion in general.
- -Ask the trainees what kinds of unpredictable actions other motorists might take. Include at least the following:
  - •They may not yield, or clear a path.
  - •They may swerve suddenly in an attempt to clear a path.
  - •They may jam on their brakes with disasterous results.
- D. Heavy Traffic and congested roads increase the risk of mishap. The more vehicles the officer must pass from the beginning to the end of the pursuit, the greater the chance that the pursuit will end in a collision.
  - •Intersection accidents represent nearly 50 percent of all EV accidents. Pursuit on roads that have many intersecting roads, and consequently cross-traffic, greatly increases risk.
- E. Poor Environmental Conditions greatly increase the chance of mishap.
- -Ask the trainees to name some poor environmental conditions. Include at least the following:
  - •Restricted visibility (fog, heavy rain, darkness, twilight).
  - •Slippery road surfaces (snow, ice, water, leaves, oil).
  - •Poor road condition (ruts, potholes, no lane markings, soft shoulders).
- F. The Pursuing Officer's Condition can influence the amount of risk involved in a pursuit. Every officer should recognize that the following conditions increase the risk of mishap:

TSG - II-P-5

## OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES

UNIT PAGE

II-P-12

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

& NOTES

1. Fatigue.

TSG - II-P-5

- -Point out that fatigue can cause drivers to make faulty judgments (e.g., stopping distances) as well as:
  - •Slow reactions.
  - •Impair coordination.
  - •Impair vision.
  - Impaired vision (for any reason).
  - 3. Drug side-effects (prescription or nonprescription).
    - •Drowsiness.
    - •Impaired coordination.
    - •Nervousness.
- -Point out that any officer who is taking any kind of medication should be alert for undesirable side effects.
  - 4. Mental or emotional condition. Being upset about personal problems or "shaken" due to a recent emergency can impair judgment.
  - 5. Undesirable physical effects can be brought about by the act of pursuit. Some include:
    - a. Tunnel vision. As speed is increased, the visual field narrows. Consequently, high speed limits peripheral vision.
      - •Objects on the side of the road will appear as blurs (those blurs could be pedestrians).

TSG - II-P-6



II-P-13

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

TSG - II-P-6

- b. Adrenalin kick. The excitement and danger of high speed driving often causes an excessive amount of adrenalin to flow into the blood. This excess adrenalin can have two effects:
  - 1) An expansion of the time-speed sense. Events are slowed down in the driver's mind.
    - •When the operator slows to 70 MPH after traveling 90 mph, he may feel as though he is moving only at 50 mph. Check the speedometer; especially when returning to normal speeds.
    - •If the pursued vehicle spins out, it may appear to be spinning in slow motion.
  - 2) An extreme sense of confidence. The adrenalin's effect often causes an officer to become over-confident in his driving ability or his vehicle's maneuverability. Officers should be alert for this kind of feeling.
    - •Otherwise cautious drivers will take foolish chances when feeling overconfident.

## -Discuss the following:

•Many veteran police officers report that the siren sound contributes to the feeling of excitement, urgency, and overconfidence. Additionally, the siren makes it difficult to concentrate on the driving tasks, or use the radio.

II-P-14

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 

Types of Pursuit

TSG - II-P-6

- A. Hazardous Violator.
  - •Included in this group are:
    - •Felons.
    - •Drunks.
    - •Reckless drivers.
    - •Speeders.
  - 1. Pursuit of such violators introduces a high degree of risk.
    - •The risk should NEVER extend to the point that the officer abandons due regard for the safety of others.
  - 2. This type of violator will have little (if any) concern for the safety of others.
  - 3. Pursuit of this type of violator requires skill, good judgment, discretion, and persistence.
- B. Nonhazardous Violator.
  - •Included in this group are:
    - •Non-moving violations.
    - •Less serious moving violations.
    - Equipment defects.

The actions of this type of violator are often made more hazardous by the act-of pursuit.

•The kind of sound most likely to be heard is one which fluctuates\

•At 90 mph (132 feet per second) the warning effect may be

POL

reduced almost to zero.

UNIT TITLE	OP	ERĄTION O	F LAW ENFOR	RCEMENT VEH	ICLES		UNIT PAGE	II-P-17
	INSTRUC	TIONAL CO	NTENT/PRES	SENTATION GL	IIDELINES		NOTES	
2. 1 f	f an offi unction.	ic <b>er</b> begi	ns to suspe	ect the veh	icle has a mal-	TSG - II-P-8	}	
3. W	hen traffic is gre	fic condi eat (viol	tions are s ation of <b>d</b> a	uch that the regard),	ne risk to the pub	)-	í	
4. I	f an offi	icer beli	eves the ac		ne violator are pursuit.		١	,
	j		′,					
				7				
•				<u>4</u> 1.				•
•						,		
		ı	,					
	(	- <b>4</b>						°г.
			•	6	,			
<u> 559</u>	, !					* * END OF	MODILLE 1	* * PO

ı

II-P-18

	TILE STANTING OF BANK BAY ONCOMMENT VEHICUES	,	PAGE	11-1-10
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	÷	NOTES	
PUR	SUIT DRIVING TECHNIQUES	* * * BEGI	N MÖDULI	E 2 * * *
Α.	Learn the territory.	TSG - II-P-9	,	<b>*</b>
	•Location of sharp curves.			•
	•Blind intersections.			
,	•Stop signs, etc.			
В;	Keep the dispatcher informed of position and progress.		ijs	,
- E m	phasize and explain the importance of points A and B above.			
С.	Keep wheels well away from pavement edges.			. ,
	•A wheel off the road, or a damaged road edge could cause loss of control.			<i>;</i>
D.	Don't brake heavily and attempt to change the direction of the vehicle at the same time.	е	<b>•</b>	
	•At high speed, this is certain to cause a skid, and perhaps an uncontrollable broadside slide.	,		
Ε.φ	Do not follow the violator too closely; move up only when ready to apprehend.			
	•Since the intentions of the violator are unknown, following too closely can have disasterous results:		*	,
	•If the violator collides with something, the pursuing officer may not have time to take evasive action.			
	•The violator could jam on his brakes (causing the office to collide with €the violator).	r	•	POL
	3			''"

## OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES

UNIT PAGE

II-P-19

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 

•The violator could make a sudden turn.

- TSG II-P-9
- F. If the pursuing officer must go through red lights and stop signals, he MUST slow enough to ensure that no motorist or pedestrian will be endangered.
- G. The pursuing officer should not travel at high speed in opposing lanes of traffic.
- H. Don't join a pursuit that already has two or more pursuing vehicles, unless specifically ordered to do so by a superior.
- ( Discuss the dangers of multiple EV pursuits. If there are any local or departmental policies on this subject, present them now.
  - I. Never attempt to ram or "nudge" the violator's vehicle with the emergency vehicle.
  - J. Avoid pulling directly beside or in front of the violator's vehicle.
    - •This provides an excellent opportunity for the violator to ram the EV.
  - K. Select a safe stopping place.
- Ask the trainees what constitutes a "safe") stopping place.
  - •Away from intersections.
  - •Away from hill crests.
  - •Off the roadway.

556

556

•Operator should notify dispatcher before leaving vehicle.

IIILE	OF ENTITION OF ENTITION ENTITION OF THE ENTITION OF THE ENTITY OF THE EN		PAGE	11-r-	20
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	N	IOTES		
MAKING	A TRAFFIC STOP	TSG - II-P-10	`	•••	
<u>routine</u>	cedures presented in this module are those for making a traffic stop. Procedures for stopping hazardous violators be made according to departmental policy.	•		,	
A. Avo	oid stopping motorists on high-speed highways, unless both icles can be entirely removed from the roadway.				
B. Pos	ition the EV to the rear of the violator's vehicle, in the me lane of traffic.			,	
	orten the gap between the EV and violator and signal the orist to stop.			•	
•Si of	ren should be used only as a last resortmotorists will ten become confused and/or hit the brakes.		•		
	horn, hand signal, headlights, emergency lights, id/or PA stem.			·	
	ose the location for the stop. Be sure contact with the later is made far enough in advance for him to reach it.	<b>\</b>	Ì		, '**
sto	e ascertaining that the motorist is aware and intends to p, signal for right turn, and assist violator in moving r lane by lane.	•			
F. Pul	1 completely off the road; park approximately six feet to rear and three feet to the left of the violator's vehicle.	,			
•EV 1i	operator should be far enough back to read violator's cense plate.				

UNIT			
TITLE OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES	V	UNIT PAGE	I-P-21
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	1
	TSG - II	***	+-
			al .
	j		•
-Explain to the trainees how this parking position will afford the officer protection.  If the EV Overshoots the Violator's Mehicle	TSG - II-P-1	1	, .
Occasionally, due to traffic conditions or faulty maneuvering, the EV operator will be forced to pull in front of a violator.	, ,		
•A police officer should NEVER approach a suspicious or dange ous person from the front.	r-		
If this occurs, the officen should:			
A: Signal the motorist to pull his vehicle up, in front of the EV, if at all possible.			
•EV's engine should be kept running until violator's vehicle is parked with ignition off.			* ,
B. If there is not sufficient room for the violator to pull in front of the EV, the officer should motion the violator to meet him at the rear of the EV, provided that neither the officer or the violator will compromise their safety by doing so		) )	
ERIC 500		<u>. 501</u>	POL

UNIT TITLE	OPERATION OF LAW ENFO	RCEMENT VEHICLES		UI	II-P-22
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRE	SENTATION GUIDELINES		NOT	ES
•	emphasize the following pol nditions seem at all unusual l radio for a back-up unit	4.4	ator	TSG - JII-P-11	. 1
•		3	*		
	***				
•		•		•	

	• 1	* \$	
OPERATION OF LAW ORCEMENT VEHICLES		UNIT	II-P-23
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT RESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
EMERGENCY ESCORT OF ANOTHER VEHICLE	TSG - II-P-		i
Emergency escort represents a dangerous situation. Some of the reasons are:	Î		
1. The EV operator does not know the other vehicle's handling characteristics or what the other driver's capabilities are.			,
2. In general, when traveling through intersections, the motoring public assumes the EV is alone.			**.* ¥
•For this reason, when providing escort EV operators should come to a complete stop at all red lights and stop signals, whether or not emergency signaling equipment is in use.			*
B. An EV operator should not escort another vehicle unless it is a life-threatening emergency, or unless specifically instructed to do so by a superior.	1. 1. 1.		•
C. There are several good alternatives to providing escort.			
•If a person in the other vehicle is critically injured, and the driver is not fit (mentally or physically) to operate the vehicle, call the dispatcher and request an ambulance or rescue unit.		•	\
-If the following point conflicts with departmental or local policy do not present it.		• • •	<b>e</b>
•If the injured person is not too seriously injured to be moved, transfer the person to the police vehicle.	•		
			<b>#</b> 1

565

		<b>9</b> **	1 1 1 1		
UNIT	OPERATION OF LAW E	NFORCEMENT VEHICLES	3		UNIT HI-P-24
,	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/	PRESENTATION GUIDELI	NES	* NC	TES
operator d	ort on the guidelines liste etermines the best cour e procedures should be	se of action is to	page, the EV provide es-	TSG - II-P-12	
A. Establ	ish a procedure with th	e other driver.	* 6		
Appro	losely to follow.  ximate speed.  route to follow.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
	should lead the other	vehicle.			
•This	will enable the EV oper will ensure that the ot top signals.	ator to control the	. 🐞 🕏		
C. Use em	ergency signaling equip law.	ment as required by	sta <b>te</b> or		<b>2</b> ***
•If th EV is ly or D. NEVER	e other vehicle is it vo providing escort the civilly liable. travel the wrong way do nes of traffic with ano	EV operator can be in a one-way street	held criminal-		
E. Avoid	traveling at species in	excess of the limit	•	TSG:II-P-13	i (managan)

•The driver of the other vehicle is probably not a "professional" driver; also, he is probably under a lot of stress.

UNIT TITLE	OPERATION OF	LAW ENFORCEM	ENT VEHICL	ES -		`	UNIT	II-P-25
	NSTRUCTIONAL CONT	ENT/PRESENT	ATION GUIDE	LINES			NOTES	
	head to the desti				for	TSG - II-P		
If imp Treques	ossible or imprac t that he telepho	tical,∗contac ne.	ct the disp	patcher a	nd ,	. 1		ð.
, ·		ı!	•					<u>.</u>
	,	i turi di		,	.غ. تلاخین زر	V		\$ 1
						, , <u>š</u>	-1	
	<b>v</b> .		,	,	,			
						*	Age Type	•
	est de la companya de la companya de la companya de la companya de la companya de la companya de la companya d		× 2		e.	4		
			,			,		<b>v</b> er e
<b>v</b>					9,0			
50 FRICE 50	3	TO THE STATE OF TH	.'			* * END 0	-4-∠∂ F MODU <b>LE</b>	2 * POL

#### Review Exercises

License plate number	vehi <b>ch</b> e.		- N
Other identifying characteristics			٠, .
Number of passengers.	: And		
Description of violator.	<del>;</del>		-
	Ū	e of the road	mau annoar
nnel vision: Limited peripheral v	Ū	e of the road :	may appear,
nnel vision: Limited peripheral to blurs.	vision, objects on the sid		
nnel vision: Limited peripheral vision: Limited peripheral vision: blurs.  enalin kick: General excitement	vision, objects on the sid		
nnel vision: Limited peripheral vision: Limited peripheral vision: blurs.  enalin kick: General excitement	vision, objects on the sid		
ite a brief description of the found of the	vision, objects on the sid		-







## OPERATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT VEHICLES



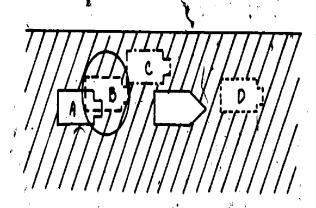
II-P-27

- C A driver who is operating the vehicle in a reckless manner.
- d. A driver whose vehicle has a burned-out headlight.
- e. A violator who has just pulled out of a parking space beside a fire hydrant.
- 4. There are many reasons why a pursuit might be abandoned. List two of them below.
  - If an officer is nervous, frightened, or shaki
  - -If an officer suspects the vehicle has a mal
  - -If traffic conditions are such that the right the public is great.
  - If the actions of the violator are being mediamere hazardous by the act of pursuit.
- 5. Below are several statements about pursuit the letter in front of those statements that are correct.
  - a. If traffic is light, you do not need to use the siren during pursuit.
  - b. When pursuing a violator, you should follow him closely to avoid having him escape.
  - (c) About 50 percent of all pursuits end in a collision.
  - d. The single greatest risk in pursuit driving is the unpredictable behavior of other motorists.
  - (e) A pursuing officer should not travel in opposing lanes of traffic at high speed.
  - f. A law enforcement officer who is pursuing a dangerous, known felon, should always pursue until the violator is apprehended.
  - (g) You should not join a pursuit that already has two or more pursuing vehicles.

572

73

6. The lettered vehicles below represent possible parking positions for making a traffic stop. Circle the letter that represents the vehicle that is parked in the correct (safest) position.



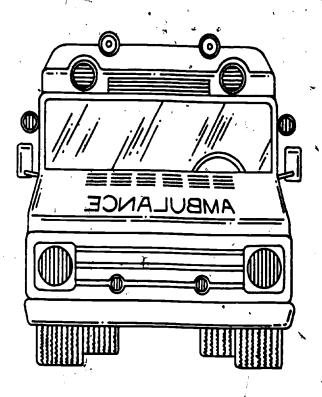
7. If emergency escort of another vehicle is permitted in your department, write a brief description of the conditions under which it is permitted. If escort is not permitted, write nothing.

- 8. For each of the situations listed below, indicate whether or not it would be appropriate to provide escort, and explain your answer.
  - You have just pulled over a car that has run through a red light. The driver. a woman, explains that she must get to the hospital quickly because her young son, who is in the back seat, has apparently broken his wrist.
    - -Escort should not be provided in this situation. A possible broken wrist is not likely to be a life-threatening situation. It would be safer for all concerned if the boy and his mother were transported to the hospital in the police vehicle if local or departmental policy permits. If local policy forbids transporting injured persons in the police vehicle, the officer should contact the dispatcher and request an ambulance.
  - b. You have just stopped to check a vehicle that was pulled off the expressway. The driver, an elderly man, explains his wife seems to have had a heart attack, she is unconscious.
    - It would be appropriate to provide escort in this situation since the woman is elderly and unconscious, and may have had a heart attack, this is more than likely a life-threatening emergency. It would not be wise to move the woman to the police vehicle.

# Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles

PART II: Specialized Unit Operation of EMT/Ambulances

INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ART II - OPERATION OF AMBULANCE	\$												•								
Description of Unit	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•		•	II-A-
Trainees' Knowledge Objectives	1	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	II-A-
Instructor Preparation Activit																					
Introduction																					
Route Planning		, ,	•				•														II-A-
Inspection and Maintenance	• 1				•	•			•	•	•		<b>)</b> :		•	•		•			II-A-
Operation of the Ambulance	• 1	, ,	. ,	. ,	•	•					• -	•	•				•	•			II-A-
Review Exercises							٧	ď		J				2							[ T A 1

## Description of Unit

This unit covers the areas of emergency vehicle operation that are especially relevant to operators of ambulances or rescue vehicles.

#### Module 1 - 90 Minutes

- 1 INTRODUCTION. Brief overview of unit content.
- 2. ROUTE PLANNING: Expansion of material covered in Unit C (Selecting Routes).
- 3. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE. Emphasis on inspection and maintenance of medical and life-support equipment. A checklist is provided.
- 4. OPERATION OF THE AMBULANCE. <u>Driving to the victim</u>. Covers techniques and procedures for driving to a victim, from the dispatcher's call to arrival.
- 5. At the Scene. Covers special parking considerations and directing traffic. Does NOT include any medical information.
- 6. Driving With a Patient Aboard. Describes the rationale and procedures for providing safe efficient transport.

## Review Exercises - 20 Minutes

Written review questions on the material presented in this unit. Time estimate allows for explanation and discussion after the trainees have completed the exercises.



II-A-2

#### Trainees' Knowl@dge Objectives

#### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given a list of statements relating to driving to a victim, will be able to identify those that are correct.
- 2. Will be able to list two reasons why it is not advisable to drive in the emergency mode with a patient aboard.
- 3. Will be able to name two medical conditions that indicate especially smooth, low-speed transport is required.
- 4. Will be able to name two conditions that indicate emergency mode transport is required.





## Instructor Preparation Activities

## Module 1

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. Preparation for II-A-6. If possible, obtain the medical supplies and life-support equipment checklist that the trainees will be using on the job. Make enough copies for all trainees, and substitute it for the checklist that appears on page II-A-7.
- 3. Preparation for II-A-8. Compare the information presented in point C with the statutes in your state. Present any additional information found in the statutes to the class at this time.
- 4. Preparation for II-A-9. If possible, find out the specific dimensions of the vehicles the trainees will be operating on the job.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: Enough copies of medical supplies and life support equipment checklists for all trainees.

Additional Resource Documents: Bibliography and reference nos.: 2, 40, 46.

585

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

#### INTRODUCTION

- \* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 1 \* \* \*
- A. An ambulance operator's primary responsibility is the safe transport of the sick and injured. Safe means:
- TSG II-A-2

- 1. Not risking an accident.
- 2. Smooth driving:
  - a. Driving that will not stress or traumatize the patient.
  - b. Driving in a manner that will permit the crew to provide medical care to the patient.
- B. No medical emergency, however severe, justifies driving in a manner that risks loss of control of the vehicle or that relies on the operators of other vehicles or pedestrians to react ideally.
- C. The topics that will be covered in the remainder of this unit include:
  - 1. Route planning.
  - 2. Inspection and maintenance.
  - 3. Operation of the ambulance.
    - a. Driving to the victim.
    - b. Responsibilities at the scene.
    - c. Driving with a patient aboard.

OPERATION OF AMBULANCES		UNIT PAGE	II-A-	- 5
INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES		
LANNING	TSG - II-A-3	,	8	<del>-</del>
ambulances operating from a fixed base, it is particularly ortant to plan in advance the various routes the ambulance likely to travel. Advance planning usually takes the form a "Routing Plan."				
Divide the area into sections.	,			,
Be based on test runs over selected routes at various times of day and night.		i g		
•Test runs should be made in a passenger car (if possible). If an ambulance is used, NEVER use emergency signaling equipment; it is ILLEGAL.		*	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
•Pinpoint times of heavy traffic congestion.			1 1	
•Locate less congested, alternate routes.	3			
Be updated at regular intervals.			. · ·	-
•Reroutings are sometimes necessary due to construction, detours, etc.		•		,
vers should always inform the dispatcher of any new conons about the area (e.g., detours). This information can be put in a trip report.				•
		-		
559	•	<b>-</b>	A = A	AMB



II-A-7

## EQUIPMENT CHECKLIST

<u>Medical</u>	OK	LOW	REPLACED		OK	LOW REPLACED
Pillows				Coft mallow and C. N	OIL	· TOU VOT EVOLED
Blanks & Sheets				Soft roller self-adhering bandages		
Portable suction apparatus				Aluminum foil, sterile & wrapped		
Bag-mask ventilation unit				Adhesive tape		··································
a. Adult mask				Burn sheets		
b, Child mask				Traction splint, limb-support slings,		4
C. Infant mask	<del></del>			ankle hitch and		
Oropharyngeal airways				traction strap		
a. Adult				Inflatable splints		
b. Child				Spine boards with accessories		
c. Infant	<del></del>			a. Short		K B
Mouth to mouth airways				b. Long		
a. Adult				Triangular bandages		
b: Child . '				Large-size safety pins		
Oxygen equipment, tubing & masks			<del></del>	Shears for bandages		,
a. Adult				Sterile obstetrical kit	Α	
b. Child			<del></del>	Poison kit		
c., Infant				Blood pressure manometer, cuff,		
				and stethoscope		
Mouth gags and tongue blades Universal dressings	<del></del>			Compartmentalized pneumatic		<del></del>
Storile gauge male		<del></del> -		trousers with inflation		
Sterile gauze pads				equipment		~
Other Fire extinguishing equipment Two-way radio for direct hospital communication Warning devices -triangular reflectors -battery operated flares Telementry equipment Extrication equipment Wrench Screwdriver Screwdriver Screwdriver - Phillips Hacksaw - (carbide) blades Pliers				Fire Axe Wrecking bar Crowbar Bolt cutter Power jack & spreader tool Shovel Tin snip Two 50' manila ropes - 3/4" diameter Hard hat Safety goggles 15' Rated chain with grab		
Hammer				hook & running hook		
Remarks:						
Driver:						
Supervisor:				Date: Date:		
			_	Dotos		

ERIC 33

594

ÌI-A-8

INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDI	LINES NOTES
4 L	

OPERATION OF THE AMBULANCE

TSG - II-A-6

#### Driving to the Patient

- A. When an ambulance operator receives a call from the dispatcher, he must obtain all relevant information.
  - •Especially important is the dispatcher's preliminary assessment of whether or not the condition is a true emergency.
- -Review the points that were taught in Unit C.
  - •Description of emergency.
  - •Address (location) and other identifiers.
  - •Indication of priority.
- B. The operator should drive to the scene with all due speed consistent with safe arrival.
  - •Proper use of lights and siren is essential.
  - •The operator must never drive so fast that vehicle control is compromised.
  - •Routine transports are <u>not</u> considered true medical emergencies.
- C. All ambulances should come to a full stop at red lights, stop signs, and railroad crossings, regardless of the nature of the emergency.
- -Tell the trainees what the laws in this state stipulate.
- D. Generally, the basic and emergency mode operation techniques presented in Part I apply to ambulances. There is, however, an additional consideration, vehicle dynamics. Ambulances



II-A-9

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

are larger than sedans (heavier, higher). Therefore, due to vehicle dynamics:

TSG - II-A-6

- 1. Be particularly aware of (and careful on) decreasing radius curves.
- 2. Following distance should be increased.
  - •Larger, heavier vehicles have greater stopping distances than sedans.
- -If you know the specifics of the type of ambulance the trainees will drive, present a comparison of the dimensions of an ambulance to an ordinary sedan and a description of the effects of a high center of gravity.

#### At the Scene

- A. Parking Considerations.
  - 1. Ambulance should be positioned for most convenient access to victim or patient.
  - 2. Ambulance should be positioned to minimize disruption to any traffic.
    - •Ambulance should be protected from damage.
  - 3. Special care should be exercised when parking on hills.

TSG - II-A-7

- •Always set the parking brake.
- •Beware of stretchers that can roll.

#### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

4. If more than one ambulance is at the scene, they should be parked in the head-and-taillight position (ladder), if possible.

TSG - II-A-7

-Draw a simple illustration of this technique on the chalkboard.

CHALKBOARD

- •This technique is most effective on the highway or in rural areas.
- B. Directing traffic. If police have not arrived at the scene, the operator may need to direct traffic or assign someone at the scene to do so.
  - •This can be very important for avoiding further injuries.
  - •If it is safe to do so, flares or reflectors should be placed as soon as possible.
- C. Ambulance should not leave the scene until:
  - 1. Patient is secured.
  - 2. All doors are closed and locked.
  - 3. Crew gives an audible "okay" (indicating all are present and prepared).

#### Driving With a Patient Aboard

- A. A high-speed transport, with its associated sudden starts and stops, can:
  - 1. Frighten the patient.
  - 2. Put a stabilized patient into shock.

II-A-11

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

3. Disrupt ongoing medical treatment.

TSG - II-A-7

- -Emphasize the following point:
  - 4. Aggravate certain medical conditions sufficiently to cause DEATH OR PERMANENT DISABILITY TO THE PATIENT.
    - •Spinal injuries, serious fractures, and heart attacks are examples of such injuries.
- B. In almost all cases, the transport should be conducted:
  - 1. At speeds below the legal limit.
  - 2. With headlights on.
  - 3. With emergency lights on.
  - 4. With siren OFF.
    - •Except in the rare case when exemptions will be exercised (e.g., traveling over the legal limit).
  - 5. Obeying all stop signals and red lights.
  - 6. Coming to a FULL STOP at all railroad crossings.
- C. There are certain medical conditions that may require "emergency mode" transport.
  - •These "emergency mode" transports only constitute about five to seven percent of the total.

TSG - II-A-8

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

D. These conditions include:

I Uncontrolled homeouters

- 1. Uncontrolled hemmorhage.
  - •Such as internal bleeding in chest or abdomen.
- 2. Uncontrolled cardiovascular or respiratory impairment.
  - •Such as congestive heart failure, wounds of the heart, or progressive pulmonary edema.
- 3. Complicated impending childbirth.
  - •Any case in which operative intervention is required.
- -Discuss the following:
  - •In any of the above cases, the ambulance should proceed to the hospital as quickly as possible, however:
    - Due regard for the safety of others must be exercised.
      - •The ambulance should still come to a full stop for red lights, stop signals, and railroad crossings.
- -Allow the trainees a few minutes to read over the article on the following page. When they have finished, conduct a brief discussion based on the article.

TSG - II-A-8

\* \* END OF MODULE 1 \*





II-A-13

#### A TRAGIC CASE OF TOO MUCH SPEED\* .

About 4 am Indian Rocks Beach Fire Department emergency medical technicians were sent to the Frank Utnage residence to treat a possible heart attach. Two firefighters, David Crane and Lt. James Terry, were the initial respondents to the call. Michael Signorelli, an off-duty firefighter, also responded because he lived two blocks from the Utnage residence.

The two men started cardio pulmonary resuscitation on Utnage and prepared him for transport to a nearby hospital. The ambulance arrived and Signorelli volunteered to go to the hospital with the ambulance crew.

Leaving for the hospital at a high rate of speed, the ambulance was followed by Utnage's wife and son-in-law, Bob LaDisa. To keep up with the ambulance, LaDisa had to maintain speeds in excess of 70 mph. Traveling at this speed, LaDisa fell behind.

About 4:30 am Drs. Robert and Janet Pettyjohn were awakened by the sound of a crash in their front yard-the ambulance had failed to take a curve (posted 35 mph limit) and had wrapped around the tree in front of the Pettyjohn residence. The Pettyjohns ran out to the macabre scene, just as Bob LaDisa and Mrs. Utnage pulled up. Mrs. Pettyjohn kept Mrs. Utnage from the scene. She was later taken to University General Hospital and treated for shock.

Five people died: The ambulance driver, Charles Kozmar, 28, married and the father of two children; ambulance attendant Robert Lovett, 25, married and father of three children; Candy DeMarco, 20, an EMT trainee, married and mother of one child (investigators were not sure why she was with the ambulance); firefighter Michael Signorelli, 23, and Frank Utnage, 64, the heart attack victim.

The impact of the H&H Ambulance Service vehicle, leaving Indian Rocks Road and sliding into the tree, tore the vehicle apart. The fiberglass top was torn off the 1973 Chevrolet van, the driver's side and floor were buckled and the equipment scattered down the road. Police estimated the speed of the ambulance at the time of impact was 55 mph.

People were scattered all over Pettyjohn's yard. Dr. Pettyjohn, chief of emergency medicine at the hospital since 1973, said the accident was the worst he had ever seen. The doctor said everyone except Mrs. DeMarco appeared to have been killed on impact. The girl had a faint pulse, but by the time she was removed from the vehicle she was dead.

Director of the Division of Environmental Control of the Pinellas County Health Department, George McCall, said ambulances should not exceed posted speed limits. "There is never any reason for an ambulance to drive faster than speed limits allow. There is little to be gained and much to be lost in that kind of performance and this is a perfect example,

"There is no excuse at all for that kind of driving. Whatever the (medical) problem was, it wasn't good enough reason to be driving like that. Instead of one alive at the hospital, there are five dead."

There are no Largo city ordinances or Florida state statutes governing the speed of emergency vehicles. It would be difficult to nationalize emergency vehicle speed limits. What is needed is an emergency vehicle driving course to instruct drivers in safe driving and handling of the vehicles in various situations. This should reduce the number of emergency vehicles involved in accidents.



<sup>\*</sup>Emergency Product News, 1976, 8 (4, 38.)



### Review Exercises

- 1. Below are several statements relating to the operation of an ambulance. Circle the letter in front of those statements that are correct.
  - a) Advance route planning can save time in an emergency.
  - b. You should use a checklist to inspect the vehicle's medical supplies and life-support equipment once a week.
  - © Routine transports are not considered medical emergencies.
  - d Ambulances generally require longer stopping distances than ordinary passenger cars.
  - e. You should not leave the scene until a patient is stabilized.
- 2. List two reasons why it is not advisable to drive in the emergency mode with a patient aboard.
  - -It can frighten the patient.
  - -It can put a stabilized patient into shock.
  - -It can disrupt on-going medical treatment.
  - -It can aggregate certain medical conditions sufficiently to cause death or permanent disability.

AMB



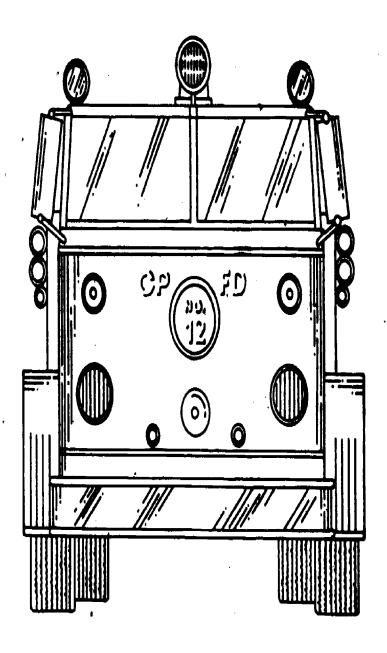
- 3. Name two conditions that indicate especially smooth, low-speed transport is desirable.
  - -Spinal injuries:
  - -Serious fractures.
  - -Heart attacks.
- 4. Name two conditions that indicate emergency mode transport is required.
  - -Uncontrolled hemmorhage. '
  - -Uncontrolled cardiovascular or respiratory impairment.
  - -Complicated impending childbirth.

AMB

# Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles

PART II: Specialized Unit Operation of Fire Apparatus

INSTRUCTOR LESSON PLANS



ERIC 1

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARI II - OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS				k																j
Description of Unit	•	•	•	•									•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. II-F-
Anowledge Ubjectives	•		٠																	
Instructor Preparation Activities.  Inspection and Maintenance	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. II-F-
Inspection and Maintenance	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. II-F-
Selecting Routes	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	II-F-1
Operating Systems	•	•	•	•		•	•	•					•							II_E_1
Special Operating Considerations								_												TT P 4
basic control lasks	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• *	•	•	•		' а •						II-F-2
Review Exercises																				TT 11 -



## Description of Unit

This unit covers the aspects of emergency vehicle operation that are relevant to members of the fire service.

### Module 1

- 1. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE. A detailed listing of the items that should be checked on a daily basis.
- 2. <u>Periodic Maintenance</u>. A detailed listing of the most important items to be checked periodically.

### Module 2

- 1. SELECTING ROUTES. Presentation of the critical factors to consider when planning or selecting routes.
- 2. OPERATING SYSTEMS. Power Train. Description of the different types of components in this system; explanation of the way the components work.
- 3. Braking System. Description of the two most common braking systems in use, and explanation of the way they work.
- 4. <u>Mission-Related Systems</u>. This section provides a place for the instructor to present information on the mission-related systems most relevant to the trainees.
- 5. SPECIAL OPERATING CONSIDERATIONS. <u>Vehicle Dynamics</u>. Brief overview of the most critical effects of vehicle dynamics.
- 6. Size and Weight. Size and weight considerations that operators of fire apparatus should know.



### Description of Unit (Continued)

7. Rules About Speed. Explanation of the two basic rules that underlie safe operation of fire apparatus.

### Module 3

- 1. BASIC CONTROL TASKS. Introduction to the basic control tasks, including some basic safety information.
- 2. Steering. Hints for learning to use steering as a tool.
- 3. Braking. Procedures for safe, effective braking.
- 4. Shifting. Explanation of what functions shifting accomplishes, as well as a statement of "do's and don'ts."
- 5. Backing. Procedures to help minimize backing accidents.
- 6. Parking. Special considerations (including priorities) for parking large fire apparatus.
- 7. Negotiating Intersections. Presentation of information especially critical for negotiating intersections safely in fire apparatus.



# Trainees' Knowledge Objectives

### Module 1

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Will be able to demonstrate, on a large fire apparatus, the daily inspection procedure.
- 2. Will be able to identify on a large fire apparatus, certain inspection items that do not meet manufacturers recommended specifications.

### Module 2

By the end of this module, the trainges:

- 1. Will be able to state two guidelines which should be followed when more than one vehicle is dispatched from the same station.
- 2. Will be able to name the two basic categories of engines found on large fire apparatus.
- 3. Will be able to name the two types of transmissions found on large fire apparatus.
- 4. Will be able to state the primary difference between synchromesh and nonsynchromesh transmissions.
- 5. Will be able to state the normal operating pressure for air brakes.
- 6. Will be able to state the normal hydrovac gauge reading.
- 7. Will be able to state the two basic rules which relate to safe speeds for fire apparatus.



# Trainees' Knowledge Objectives (Continued)

### Module 3

By the end of this module, the trainees:

- 1. Given several statements relating to braking techniques, will be able to identify those that are correct.
- 2. Given a listing of several different types of emergency vehicles, will be able to rank them according to the priorities at a working fire.
- 3. Will be able to list three techniques that can minimize the possibility of intersection collisions.



# Instructor Preparation Activities

Please Note: The unit has been designed to allow the instructor to expand upon and customize the materials. Visual aids such as schematics of the moving parts of the apparatus will facilitate trainees' understanding of this material. Also, it is a good idea for the instructor to obtain as much information as possible about the specific vehicle's the trainees will drive on the job, and any local policies that may be relevant to the operation of fire apparatus in a particular locale.

### Module 1

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials. As you read, remain alert for topics that need expansion based on local policies. Note such topics and obtain the relevant information so that you can present it in class.
- 2. Preparation for II-F-7. Obtain copies of the inspection checklists that the trainees will use on the job.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: Enough copies of inspection checklist for all trainees.

### Module 2

- 1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.
- 2. If you can obtain copies of the "owner's manual" for the trainees to examine, it would be very helpful.

Instructor Preparation Activities (Continued)

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: None

#### Module 3

1. Read over the entire module and be prepared to present a lecture on those materials.

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk.

Materials: None

#### Review Exercises

You will notice that the review exercises do not contain any questions that test the material presented in Module 1. If you wish to "test" the trainees on this material, you can do so by using the inspection checklists you obtained. Use Trainees' Knowledge Objectives numbers 1 and 2 under Module 1 to test this information.

### Additional Resource Documents:

Bibliography and reference nos.: 12, 47, 51.

·II-F-7

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

#### NOTES

### INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Regular inspection of fire apparatus is necessary because the véhicles tend to be complex. Also, fire apparatus carry mission-related equipment which is constantly used and supplies which are continually depleted. In many communities, fire apparatus operators are expected to participate in both daily and periodic maintenance. A recommended daily routine includes the following:

-Tell the trainees about any differences between these procedures and the local routines.

### A. Underhood. Check:

- 1. Engine oil within manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Coolant level within manufacturer's recommendations.

### B. External. Check:

- 1. Water tank level, dry chemical, light water, rapid water, wet water levels.
- 2. All glass.
- 3. Compartments:
  - a. Items inside properly secured.
  - b. Doors securely latched.
- 4. Hose load properly secured and aerial, snorkel, telescopic boom latched in bed.
- 5. Tires and wheels:

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 1 \* \* \*

TSG - II-F-3

	HILE			PAGE	
		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	ų	IOTES	
•	. a.	. Tires up (thump test).	TSG - II-F-3		ı ı
	, b	Tires undamaged.			
•	C	Wheel lugs show no signs of slippage.	TSG - II-F-4		
	6. A	ll externally mounted equipment secural.			
	7. Pi	rimer tank level.			•
	8. A	ll pump control and aerial control in proper position.		4	
С.	Under	carriage. Check for:		, ,	
	1. Ex	ccess oil, water, and hydraulic fluid leaks.		•	
ŧ	2. Ar	oparatus attitude (not leaning excessively, etc.).			
	3. No	o obvious loose or dangling parts.	*	3 V	
D.	In cat	with motor off. Check that:		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
	1. Er	ngine shutdown systems operate properly.		· · ·	•
	2. Ma	aster switches operate properly.	ì		
	3. Se	eat is adjusted to assigned driver.		• •	
,	4. Mj	rrors are properly adjusted for assigned driver.	*		· •
	5. Pr	coper clutch free play.			
E.	In cab	with motor running. Check that:			
	1. In	astruments show proper readings (per manufacturer).			
				•	FIRE

UNIT TITLE	OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS		UNIT	, ĮI-F-9
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES			
2. All	l <b>M</b> ghts work.	TSG - II		
73. Wij	pers work.			6
4. Bra	ke warning system works.			
5. Eng	ine turns over at usual speed during start.	TSG - II	PAGE NOTES F-4	
6. All	switches in proper position.	TSG - II-F-4  TSG - II-F-5  ressure for brakes.  n covers the major russ the process for  out by the systems check are as  checks If pecifications for ercarriage inspecain should occafileaks and cracks.		A (10)
7. Eng	ine develops proper vacuum or air pressure fo	r brakes.		
making the Periodic Ma Periodic ma		rocess, for		
maintenanc	pass out copies of manufacturer's specificale, per items below.	ions for		
sionally	be degreased to assist checking for leaks ar	1 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4		<b>4</b>
,	ine - check mounts.  Lubrication system.			
	1) Change oil fifters per manufacturer.			
TC - DU () -			<u>.e 63</u>	FIRE

ness.

UNIT TITLE	OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS	(	UNIT PAGE	II-F-11
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		VOTES	
	2) Check hold downs:	TSG - II-F-6	<u> </u>	
	3) Check level and specific gravity of battery water.	<u> </u>		,
	4) Charge as required.			
	5) Connections and all wiring clean and tight.			
	6) Belts tight per manufacturer's specifications.			
e	Air system.	TSG - II-F-7		,
	1) Air intake unrestricted.			
	<ol> <li>Service air cleaner and filter per manufacturer's specifications.</li> </ol>			
f	Exhaust system.	,		
	1) All connections tight.	•	٧	•
	2) No obvious leaks or holes.	(		
2. C1	utch and manual transmission.	,	,	
. a.	Proper free play in the pedal per manufacturer's specifications.			,
b.	Clutch operates smoothly, with no slippage.			
c.	Transmission oil clean and at the proper level per manufacturer's specifications.			
d.	Transmission case shows no leaks.			,

Transmission not excessively noisy.

			****	´
		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES	
	f.	Transmission shifts smoothly and stays in gear.	TSG - II-F-7	
	g.	Breather clean, if so equipped.	ı	·
3.	Au	tomatic transmission.		·
	a.	Stays within manufacturer's specified operating )temperature range.		٨
	b.	Develops proper pressure and shifts smoothly.	TSG - II-F-8	
,	¢.	Fluid checked following manufacturer's recommended procedure.		;
•	d.	Fluid changed at proper intervals.		
	e.	Breather clear if so equipped.		,
. 4.	Dr	iveshafts.		,
T.	a.	No excessive slop (gear lash).		
	b.	U-joints properly lubricated.		
	С.	Hanger bearings properly lubricated.		
	d.	No signs of twisting or bending.	•	
5.	Ďi	fferential.	4	
	a.	Proper fluid level (change per manufacturer's specification).		
	Ъ.	No obvious leaks, especially at seals.		
	C.	Axle bolts tight and to manufacturer's specifications.		FIRE

II-F-13

	11114		A THE MITMONIO		PAGE	II-F-13-
	<del></del>		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	<u>.                                    </u>
		d.	Differential in proper alignment to chassis.	TSG - II-F-8	!	
	6.	Ch	assis and suspension.			
		a.	Proper lubrication.			
		b.	No cracks in frame.			·
		c.	No bends or apparent misalignment.		•	
		d.	Axles properly secured to suspension.	TSG - II-F-9		,
		e.	Springs and suspension properly secured to frame.	<b>*</b>		
		f.	No cracked leaves in springs.	ļ.		
		g.	U-bolts tight and properly aligned.	ı		
		h.	Body and cab bolts tight with no signs of chafing.			
•		i.	Front-end alignment checked.			
		j.	Shocks properly attached.			
	7.	Tin	res and wheels.			
		a.	Tire inflation per manufacturer's recommendations.			
		Ъ.	Cast spoke lugs checked for tightness and slippage or excessive wobble.	'		
		с.	Budd-type wheels checked for lug tightness and cracks.		1.3	
		d.	Tires inspected for cuts, tread depth, and sidewall damage.	,	8	, ,

1.10.10			<b>%</b>	,	
UNIT		OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS	Û.	UNIT PAGE	II-F-15
<u> </u>		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		VOTES	
	1.	Low air warning signal working.	TSG - II-F-10	<del></del> )	
	m.	Computer (121) brakes working properly.			€a tg ,
10.	Bra	akes (driveline).		.* .	
في	a.	Properly adjusted.		٠.	
	b.	Sufficient lining.		2	
	c.	Linkage properly lubricated.	TSG - II-F-11		
11.	Pum	np.			
,	a.	Check pump activation system.		t	
`	,	1) Pump disengages easily.			
		2) Pump engages smoothly.		,	
•		3) Pump noisy when engaged.			
,		4) Pump throttle working properly.			
<b>\$</b> )	b.	Check pump transmission oil level and for contamination.			
	с.	Check priming system for proper operation.		Ì	
*	d.	All valves operate smoothly.		· \	
12.	Aer	ial ladder/aerialscope/articulating boom.		İ	
	a.	P.T.O.			

1) Engages/disengages easily.

- 2) Develops proper pressure.
- b. Automatic throttle operates proper
- c. All U-joints properly lubricated.
- d. Hydraulic fluid at proper level.
- e. All controls functioning properly.
- if. Locks for bed of aerial/boom working properly.
- g. Stabilizers and outriggers working propérly.
- 13. Miscellaneous equipment.
  - a. Rescue squad winch P.T.O. works properly.
  - b. Generators remote start functioning properly.
  - c. All power tools working properly.

NOTES

TSG - II-F-11

TSG - II-F-12

\* \* END OF MODULE 1

II-F-17

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

# NOTES

### SELECTING ROUTES

The operator of fire apparatus needs to be especially careful in selecting routes because of the length and weight of the vehicle.

- A. Characteristics of roadways are very significant in the selection of a route for large fire apparatus.
  - 1. Narrow alleys are more difficult to negotiate. They must be sufficiently wide to permit the fire apparatus to pass through without damaging property along the sides. Negotiating sharp curves of 90° turns may be impossible in narrow alleys.
  - 2. Support capability of the roadway is critical. Some small bridges and wet dirt roads cannot support fire apparatus.
    - •Fire apparatus get stuck easily when dirt roads are wet and muddy.
  - 3. Be alert for sufficient overhead clearance.
    - •Low wires are a real hazard.
- B. Access to building entries must be considered in the selection of an approach route. Some fire departments perform periodic access inspections:
  - 1. In many urban locations, block inspections are regularly conducted. Once a week, an inspection of some block in the station's district is scheduled. By inspecting a different square block each week, the firemen can update their information (and maps) on roads, buildings, and hydrants in the district.
    - •Most efficient approach. .
    - •Location of hydrants.
    - •Points of entry (windows, doors).

\* \* \* BEGIN MODULE 2 \* \* \*

TSG - II-F-13

FIRE

<del>546</del>

II-F-18

		rau.
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES	NOTES
i	•Overhead or other obstructions	TSG - II-F-13
	•Optimal parking sites, considering support capability of the ground.	*
	•Weight limits of parking garages, elevated ramps, etc.	4
2.	In many suburban and rural locations, a number of buildings are selected for weekly inspections.	1
Sta	•Buildings selected include institutions such as schools and hospitals, as well as private homes.	
	tiple-vehicle responses are common in the fire service, they affect the selection of routes.	
/ 1 <b>.</b>	If several vehicles are dispatched from the same station, two guidelines apply:	
	a. The first vehicle out should completely clear the driveway before the second vehicle pulls out.	TSG - II-F-14
	b. Two or more vehicles traveling in the same direction should maintain a five-hundred-foot distance between vehicles.	
•	•This distance permits adequate reaction time and stopping distance in the event one vehicle should go out of control. In many states this distance is a legal requirement.	
2.	If several emergency vehicles are approaching the scene of an emergency from different directions, they CAN COLLIDE AT AN INTERSECTION.	
	•This kind of collision accounts for a high percentage of fire vehicle accidents.	FIRE



NOTES

OPERATING SYSTEMS

Drivers must be aware of the systems that move and control the fire vehicle and how they operate. Understanding how the systems work and their interactions is necessary for efficient operation, routine maintenance, and troubleshooting.

- \*Power train.
- •Braking system.
- •Mission-related suppression or support equipment (i.e., fire pump, aerial/snorkel P.T.O. pump).

### Power Train

- A. The power train consists of the engine, transmissions, drive-shaft, and differential. The engine provides the motive (turning) power and has subsystems which perform other functions.
  - •Cooling.
  - •Lubrication.
  - •Fueling.
  - •Ignition,
  - •Carbueration.
- B. Many different engines are in use today, but all fit in two basic categories:
- -Ask the trainees if they know the catagory of engine in their & apparatus.

TSG (= 11-F-15

			,	1,746		
		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES		
	1.	Gasolineair/fuel mix ignited by a spark electrically produced.	TSG - Il-F-1!	5		,
, 1	2.	Dieselair compressed to provide heat; fuel injected; auto ignition. Diesels are further distinguished by power output:	,	•		,
	Ť	a. The regular diesel has limited operating range in comparison with gas engines; power climbs to a peak and then drops.	,		1	,
, 1		b. The high-torque/constant-torque diesel has a wide operating range with power almost constant throughout the range.				
С.	to a	transmission modifies the power that the engine produces, accomplish various tasks such as higher speed, better pull-power, etc.		•		
	l.	There are two types of transmissions in common use by the fire service.	TSG - 11-F-16	)	,	`
		•Manual, which is shifted by the operator.	Ì			,
	•	•Automatic, which is usually allowed to shift automatically but can be shifted manually.				
,	2.	Manual transmissions can be disconnected from the engine by the clutch. The clutch is comprised of discs which are lined with a high-friction material.				,
	3.	Manual transmission's are either synchromesh or non- synchromesh. Synchromesh transmissions can be shifted without double-clutching and nonsynchromesh transmissions require double-clutching to make engine speed and gear speed match.	·	Ý		
				;		FIRE

NOTES

- Describe double-clutching. Mention that many nonsynchromesh transmissions are still around and are still being purchased.
  - a.\ The most common manual transmissions for fire service use are four and five speeds.
  - b. Automatics most common to fire service are two, four, five, and six speeds.
- -Schematic of total driveline should be show possible,
- D. The differential transfers power between the driveshaft and the rear axles and then, in turn, to the rear wheels. Some departments utilize a two-speed differential to make better use of available engine power.

### Braking System

- Two different braking systems prevail in modern apparatus: air and hydrovac. Both systems operate on the principle of multiplying force by applying a small amount of force over a large piston-like area.
  - A: Air brakes. Air pressure is developed by a compressor driven by the vehicle's motor and stored in air tanks or reservoirs. For marking, air brake-equipped apparatus utilizes one or both of two methods:
    - A driveline make (actual disc or drum attached to driveshaft activated by lever and cables).
    - 2. A spring activated brake atop the service brake chamber which automatically applies brakes when air pressure drops below preset pressure.

•Normal operating range is 60-120 p.s.i.

TSG - II-F-17

NOTES

B. Hydrovac brakes utilize a vacuum from the engine. Since diesel engines do not produce a vacuum as the gas engine does, hydrovacs are found only on gasoline driven vehicles. Most hydrovac-equipped vehicles utilize driveline brakes or a lock-type device which is applied by moving a lever and stepping on the brake.

TSG - II-F-17

# Mission-Related Systems

Mission related systems include the fire pump (either power take off [P.T.O.] or transmission driven) and the hydraulic system (also P.T.O.) which powers most aerial apparatus.

- A. The operator must be familiar with the procedure for engaging any and all such equipment.
- B. The operator must be totally familiar with the safe operation of pumps and aerial equipment to efficiently utilize any fire vehicle.
- -Present a general over-view of mission-related systems for the fire service vehicle(s) which will be used by the trainees.

II-F-23

# INSTRUCTION ONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

SPECIAL OPERATING CONSIDERATIONS

TSG - II-1-18

### Vehicle Dynamics

Vehicle dynamics are an important consideration for the operators of fire apparatus. A high center of gravity exaggerates side-to-side weight problems.

- •Remember you drove a two-ton car to the station. Your pumper may weigh in at 10-15 tons, so don't expert it to handle like the family buggy.
- A. Winding roads, sharp curves, soft shoulders, crowned roads and improperly banked roads can cause the fire apparatus to roll over as a result of weight shift.
- B. A half-full water tank can cause firm apparatus to skid out of control, as weight shift exceeds the ability of the tires to hold the road during a cornering maneuver. Policy usually requires that the pumper travel either completely full or completely empty. Baffles can make this problem much less serious.
  - •Virtually all new pumpers have baffles as standard equipment.

-Explain the purpose of "baffles."

Siscuss local policy regarding water load requirements far pumpers.

### Size and Weight

A. The length of the apparatus makes it harder to drive.

NOTES

- 1. A larger gap in cross traffic is required for fire apparatus to cross an intersection.
- TSG II-F-18

TSG - 11-F-19

- 2. A large gap in traffic is required when fire apparatus is entering an expressway from a ramp.
- 3. A number of lames in both directions must be used to maneuver fire apparatus through a U-turn.
- Mention how T/T turns are sometimes necessary.
  - 4. Sufficient clearance is required forward and to the back of the apparatus then parking at curbside.
  - 5. Corners must be taken wider to allow for apparatus' length.
- B. The weight of the apparatus can cause unexpected problems.
  - 1. The weight of the apparatus produces greater momentum than might be expected. Slowing and stopping must be begun well in advance of the stopping point. Forgetting this fact can be especially hazardous at intersections. The only defense against this hazard is:
    - a. Scan well ahead of the vehicle.
    - b. Trave speeds which allow control of the vehicle.
    - c. Begin to stop well in advance of the intended stopping pant.
  - 2. The power-to-weight ratio of the apparatus generally makes the apparatus hard to accelerate from a stop and hard to accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform an accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop and the accelerate to perform a stop acceler

-Also point out that vehicles the overpowered and that causes problems as well.

\* END OF MODULE 2 \* \*

\_\_\_

ary limits by braking and gearing down.

053

II-F-25

II-F-26

### INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDEMNES

#### NOTES

### BASIC CONTROL TASKS

- A. Since the operator spends more time behind the wheel of his car than behind the wheel of an engine or truck, he must constantly remind himself of the performance differences.
- B. The operator must also develop an awareness of the safety of the crew on board.
  - They are often not readily visible to him.
- -List major, safety points on the chalkboard.
  - 1. Standard start out procedures should be established if none exist, i.e., standard signals from the tailboard crew which indicate stop, go, and okay to back up.
  - 2. Crew should ride in the cab or in enclosed areas wherever possible.
  - 3. Turnout gear should be on and seat belts used.
  - 4. Pay attention to station door activation system. Is the door fully open? Will timer cause it to close on you on the way out?
- C. Safe, smooth responses demand coordination of steering, braking, wifting, and the perception of hazards, tempered with good working knowledge of the vehicle's dynamics.

### Steering

A. The operator should be encroughly familiar with the steering "feel" of each vehicle he is assigned to drive. No two vehicles have the same "feel," the operator should get to know it to prevent problems before they occur

BEGIN MODULE 3

TSG - II-F-21 '

CHALKBOARD

			•		<u>: ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' '</u>	
	INIT ITLE	OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS		,	UNIT PAGE	II-F-28
,		INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GU	IDELINES		NOTES	•
K. Bra	vehicle	dge of vehicle dynamics should be used e for turns. The operator must, howev ar with the vehicle's "feel" to apply	er, be extremely	TSG - II-		
A.	·Ormal vac gau	air operating pressure is 60-120 p.s. uge reading is 20-25 inches mercury.	i. Normal hydro-		, , ,	,
th ;	ese spec	acturer's specifications. The operato cifications for his vehicle. s important here also; be aware of the				* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
•, ,	2, Han	drovacs often require extra "pump" to rd constant pressure on air brakes oft ve" prior to a stop. The operator sho the stop to smooth out the stop.	en causes "nose-			
C.	brakes.	mal use, the operator should not pump	or fan the air	1		1.
υ ·	and bra	nt pressure on brakes causes tremendou ake fade. On steep grades use brakes cooling and utilize engine compression e.	intermittently to			
Ε.	_	g up the brakes actually reduces stopp ortens tire life.	ing efficiency	,		
F.,	The openicles	erator should learn the procedures to he drives in the event of air or vacu	follow for the ve- um loss.		<b>V</b>	FIRE

ERIC Arul Text Provided by ERIC

**NOTES** 

-Explain the proper procedure for the type of system(s) to be used | TSG - II-F-23 by the trainees.

- Use parking brakes as recommended by the manufacturer. Use secondary means if available (driveline brake, chocks, etc.).
- The operator should remember that with computerized brakes, if the computer fails, the system returns to normal air operation and he must gain control.
- I. Many trucks are equipped with "dry road/slippery road" or "front wheel limiting valves" for the driver's use.
- -Explain what these items do

### Shifting

- A. Shifting entails proper gear selection to accomplish the driver's objective for the power the engine produces; i.e., speed up, slow down, pull ahead. The transmission is the driver's tool; he must be able to utilize it properly.
- B. Manual shifting do's. A good driver:
  - 1. Knows shift patterns of every piece of apparatus he drives.
  - 2. Knows just where the clutch begins to catch.
  - Shifts before or after turns so as to keep both hands on the wheel during turns.
  - Takes his foot off the clutch immediately after completing shifts.

TSG - II-F-24

UNIT	ODEDATION OF FIRE ARRADATIO		UNIT	
TITLE	OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS		PAGE	II-F-30
	INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES		NOTES	
- Mentic	on engine brakes and how they affect shifting if left on.	TSG - II-F-2	4	
5.	Places transmission in neutral and lets clutch out if vehicle will be parked idling for an extended period.			
-Explai	n about throw-out bearing wear,		; ,	
6.	Knows that heat and shock loading are major cuases of premature driveline failure.		V	•
-'Discus	s shock loading.	,		
7.	Is capable of determining when clutch needs adjustment.		J.	· ·
	•When free travel becomes excessive or clutch catched too far out.	•		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
8.	Can double-clutch properly on upshifts and downshifts.	, 		•
9.	Knows the speed ranges of each gear.			
10.	Knows how to "flare out" shifts to get load off trans- mission to make shifting easier.		1	
11.	Chooses proper gear to get vehicle moving on different terrain.			
8	•Don't overspeed engine.	·	<b>.</b>	•
12.	Is aware of special equipment on his vehicle, i.e., clutch brake, retarder.	TSG - II-F-2	5	
C. Man	ual shifting don'ts. A good driver doesn't:		•	,
1.	Force transmission into gear.	, <b>,</b>		×

Hold vehicle on hill with the clutch.

FIRE

673

5. Know what the manufacturers recommend for engine operating

range, and use the transmission to keep the engine within

FIRE

TSG - II.-F-26

it.

### OPERATION OF FIRE APPARATUS

UNIT: PAGE

II-F-32

## INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

NOTES

E. Automatic shifting do's. A good driver:

- TSG II-F-26
- 1. Learns what manufacturer's recommendations are for automatic upshifting and downshifting.
- 2. Learns what extra features transmission may have and how to use them properly.
  - •Such as "detent," retarders, etc.
- 3. Attempts to learn how to manipulate the transmission with the accelerator to make it work smoothly. Learns speed ranges in each gear.
- F. Automatic shifting don'ts. A good driver doesn't:
  - 1. Overheat transmission.
    - •Operator must watch temperature gauge for transmission oil.
  - 2. Try to force downshifts at speeds above those recommended by the manufacturer.

### Backing

Because of the size of fire apparatus, the operator's visibility is limited when attempting to back the vehicle. As a result, BACKING SHOULD BE AVOIDED whenever possible. If backing must be performed, several techniques will improve safety of the operation:

- Discuss standard warning signals.
- A. Signal with horn and lights to warn other emergency personnel, motorists, and pedestrians.

UNIT
PAGE

H-F-33

MICTOLICTICALL	AA.	
INSTRUCTIONAL	CONTENT	PRESENTATION GUIDELINES
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	THE SENTIALION GUIDELINES

NOTES

B. Monitor rear- and side-view mirrors.

TSG - 11-F-26

C. Assign crew members to assist in backing.

TSG - 11-F-27.

- •Direct traffic.
- •Stand off rear fenders and direct backing operation.
- •Stand off right front of vehicle and walk vehicle back.

# Parking

The procedures and techniques for parking large fire apparatus were covered in the first part of the course and in the <u>Backing</u> section of this unit. In this part of the unit, special considerations for parking fire apparatus will be addressed.

- A. At the scene of a working fire, the parking positions of fire equipment must facilitate, and not interfere with, performance of the mission.
  - 1. Suppression apparatus have the first priority in choosing a parking position.
    - a. Aerial apparatus must be parked at the appropriate distance from access points to the building; clear access free of overhead obstructions is critical; space must be available for putting down the outriggers or jacks; outriggers need to be on pawement or firm ground.
      - •At garden-type apartment complexes, access is often difficult. Use lighter units to advance lines off road. Keep one set of tires on sidewalk if available.



1. Ground support capability, for both the apparatus and its

outriggers, must be evaluated.

FIRE

II-F-35

# INSTRUCTIONAL CONTENT/PRESENTATION GUIDELINES

**NOTES** 

2. Chocks should be placed squarely, not at an angle, in front of the rear wheels. Chocks should be placed behind

rear wheels if vehicle is facing uphill.

3. The operator stays with the vehicle, monitoring instruments and gauges; he must be prepared to move the vehicle efficiently if so ordered by an officer.

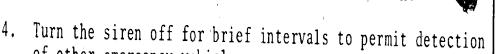
-Explain that "chocking" is also called "scotching."

TSG - II-F-28

### Negotiating Intersections

Preventing intersection collisions is a special concern for fire apparatus because they require extremely long stopping distances.

- A. The best procedures for preventing intersection collisions are the following:
  - 1. Travel with windows down, to hear other sirens.
  - 2. Slow down to 10 mph on approaching an intersection.
  - 3. Vary the sound of the siren to attract attention.



- •Air horns help too (intermittent blasts, listening for others).
- 5. Look left straight right left before proceeding through an intersection.
- B. Some additional knowledge could help avoid a collision.
  - 1. What other units have been dispatched?

of other emergency vehicles.

TSG - II-F-29

FIRE

\* \* END OF MODULE 3 \* \* FIRE



### Review Exercises

1/	List two guidelines which sho	ould be followed	whenever	more than one	vehicle is	dispatched
, ,	for a given fire station.					

The first vehicle should completely clear the driveway before the second sepicle pulls out.

Two or more vehicles traveling in the same direction should manage have hundred

(500) foot distance between each other.

- What are the two basic types of engines in use on five the two basic types of engines in use on five
  - Gasoline
  - -Diesel

3. What are the two types of transmissions in general use of large fire apparatus?

- Automatic
- What is the primary difference between synchromesh and nonsynchromesh transmissions?
  - -Synchronesh transmissions can be shifted without double-clutching.

FIRE

5.	What is the normal operating pressure for air brakes?
	-60-120 p.s.i.
6.	What is the normal hydrovac gauge reading?
	-20-25 inches mercury.
4	<b>b</b>
7.	List the two basic rules which relate to safe speeds for fire apparatus.
	-Fire apparatus should not exceed posted speed limits.
	-Fire apparatus should not exceed cautionary speeds.
.8.	Below are several statements relating to braking techniques. Circle the letter in front of those that are correct.
	a In normal use, you should not pump or fan air brakes.
	b. Locking the brakes will reduce stopping efficiency.
	c. If computerized brakes fail, the apparatus will have no braking capability.
9.	Below is a listing of several different types of emergency vehicles. Rank them according to parking priorities at a working fire by placing a "l" beside the vehicle with the first priority, a "2" beside the vehicle with second priority, etc.
1	Pumper
	3 Police vehicle
	2 Ambulance
	FIRE

- 10. List three techniques that can minimize the possibility of an intersection collision.
  - -Travel with windows down.
  - -Slow to 10 mph when approaching an intersection.
  - -Vary the siren sound.
  - -Turn siren off for brief intervals.
  - -Look left-straight-right before proceeding through an intersection.

691

FTRE

#### APPENDIX 1

Bibliography and References

692

1 - 1

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY AND REFERENCES

- 1. Alabama Law Enforcement Driving Academy. Curriculum. Enterprise, Alabama: Author, 1975.
- 2. American Academy of Orthogedic Surgeons, The Committee on Injuries. Emergency care and transportation of the sick and injured. Menasha, Wisconsin & George Banta Co., 1971.
- 3. American Automobile Association. Sprtsmanlike driving (seventh edition). New York, New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Webster Division, 1975.
- 4. Amrine, M. The safe driving handbook. New York: Grosset & Dunlop, 1970.
- The Associated Public-Safety Communications Officers, Inc.

  Public safety communications standard operating procedure

  inual. New Smyrna Beach, Florida: Author, November 1974.

  (revised edition).
- 6. National Advanced Driver Training and Research Company. recommended program for advanced emergency vehicle drivers wining. Collingswood, New Jersey: Author.
- 7. Bonaguro, L.A. Pursuit of law violators by police legal aspects. National safety congress transactions, 1969, 24, 8-12.
- 8. California Highway Patrol Academy. <u>The driver</u>. Sacramento, CA: Author, April 1969.
- 9. California Highway Patrol Academy. Emergency vehicle operations course in-service driver training (syllabus of instruction). Sacramento, CA: Author.
- 10. California Highway Patrol. <u>Enforcement tactics</u>, (Chapters 8, 9, 10). California: <u>Author</u>. (HPG 7016).
- 11. California Highway Patrol, Analysis Section. Authorized emergency vehicle accidents. California: Author, December 1974.
- 12. California State Department of Education. Driver training (Fire department driver training manual of instruction, revised edition). Sacramento, California: Office of State Printing, 1972.
- 13. The Center for the Environment. A study of the problem of hot pursuit by the police. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Safety Bureau, July 1970.



- 14. Center for Safety and Driver Education, Applachian State University. Emergency vehicles operations course (final report). Boone, North Carolina: Author, February 1976.
- 15. Clark, J.M., Jr. Emergency and high speed driving techniques. Houston, Texas: Gulf Publishing Company, 1976.
- 16. Council, F.M., Sadof, M.G., Roper, R.B. & Desper, L.P.

  Emergency skills resources for range related driver
  education. Chapel Hill, North Carolina: University of
  North Carolina, Highway Safety Research Center,
  September 1975.
- 17. Dallas Fire Department, Driver Training School. <u>Driver</u> training school curriculum. Dallas, Texas: Author, 1971.
- 18. Delaware State Fire School. <u>Driving fire department vehicles</u>. Delaware: Author.
- Practice driving guides for use with sportsmanlike driving (sixth edition). New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Webster Division.
  - 20. General Motors Proving Grounds. Advanced driver education course (training manual). Milford, Michigan: Author.
  - 21. Georgia State Patrol. <u>Pursuit driving</u>. Atlanta, Georgia: Author, 1976.
  - -22. Greater St. Louis Police Academy, Driver Training Section.

    Advanced driver education for emergency vehicle operators.

    (Phase I: Classroom; Phase II: Driving Range Accident Avoidance Exercises.) St. Louis, Missouri: Author.
  - 23. Greater St. Louis Police Academy, Driver Training Section.

    Advanced driver education for emergency vehicle operators.

    (Phase II: Driving Range Accident Avoidance Exercises.)

    St. Louis, Missouri: Author.
  - 24. Handouts obtained from the American Automobile Association, West Penn Motor Club. Nos. 3385, 3361, MS308-500M, 3389, 3396, 3556, 3313, 3396, Ts-111 P, 3387, 3290, 3380, 3341.
  - 25. Handouts obtained from Liberty Mutual Insurance Company, Boston, Massachusetts. Nos. PR/124, PR/111, PR/109 R-1, PR/108 R-2.
  - 26. Handouts obtained from the Travelers Insurance Co., Pittsburgh Office Nos. C-9532D, C-16274, C-9543D.



- 27. How to set up an emergency driving range. Boston,
  Massachusetts: Liberty Mutual Insurance Co. (PR-120)
- 28. Idaho Peace Officers Training Academy, Basic Recruit School.

  Patrol emergency and pursuit driving (student guide).

  Idaho: Author.
  - 29. Improving driver performance (a curriculum for licensed drivers). Washington, D.C.: Highway Users Federation for Safety and Mobility, June 1971.
- 30. Kansas Highway Safety Coordinating Office, Kansas Highway Patrol Academy. Emergency vehicle operations course. Topeka, Kansas: Author.
- 31. Kent State University. Emergency driving procedures curriculum guide. Columbus, Ohio: State of Ohio, Department of Education, Driver Education Section, July 8-19, 1974,
- 32. Los Angeles County Sheriff's Department. Los Angeles County sheriff's department driver training program. Los Angeles, California: Author, May 1973.
- 33. McKnight, A.J. & Adams, B.B. <u>Driver education task analysis</u>:

  Volume I. <u>Task descriptions</u>. Alexandria, VA: <u>Human</u>

  Resources—Research Organization, November 1970.
- 34. McKnight, A.J. & Hundt, A.G. <u>Driver education task analysis:</u>

  <u>Instructional objectives.</u> Alexandria, VA: Human Resources
  Research Organization, March 1971. (HumRRO-TR-71-9)
- 35. Minnesota Highway Safety Center. <u>Instruction tips</u>. St. Cloud: Author.
- 36. National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances.

  <u>Uniform vehicle code and model traffic ordinance</u> (rev. ed.).

  <u>Charlotteville, Virginia: The Michie Company, 1968.</u>
- 37. National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances.

  <u>Uniform vehicle code and model traffic ordinance</u>
  (supplement II). Charlottesville, Virginia: The Michie Company, 1976.
- 38. National Safety Council. Defensive driving course (instructor's manual). Chicago, Illinois: National Safety Council, 1975.



- 39. National Safety Council, Statistics Division, Accident facts (1975 edition). Chicago, Illinois: Author, 1975.
- 40. Naval Safety Center. Ambulance driver course. Naval Air Station, Norfolk, VA.: Author, 1976. (NAVSAFECEN 1124 OP2).
- 41. Newcomb, F.D. & Caprenter, K. Emergency vehicle accident involvement. New York: State of New York, Department of Motor Vehicles, Division of Research and Development, 1 July 1972.
- 42. North Carolina State Highway Patrol. <u>Police pursuit driving</u> course. Raleigh, NC: Author.
- 43. Northwestern University Traffic Institute. Officer violator relationships. (Traffic law enforcement series).

  Evanston, III.: 1969. (P.N. 2027).
  - 44. Northwestern University, Traffic Institute. Pursuit in traffic law enforcement. Evanston, Illinois: Author, 1974.
  - 45. Northwestern University, Traffic Institute. Stopping and approaching the traffic violator. (Traffic law enforcement series). Evanston, Ill.: Author, 1958 (P.N. 2022).
  - 46. Office of Emergency Medical Services, Connecticut State
    Department of Health. Emergency vehicle drivers training
    (course syllabus). Hartford, Connecticut: Author.
  - 47. Oklahoma State University. <u>International fire service</u>
    training association manual (lesson plan no. 15). Stillwater,
    Oklahoma: Author.
  - 48. Oklahoma State University. <u>International fire service training association manual</u> (lesson plan no. 16). <u>Stillwater</u>, Oklahoma: Author.
  - 49. Pennsylvania State Police Academy, Bureau of Training and Education. Training materials (police pursuit driving, advanced driving techniques, roadblocks, defensive driving, cadet syllabus, twenty-four week course). Hershey, PA: Author, 1975-1976.
  - 50. Rubber Manufacturers Association. Care and service of automobile tires. Washington, D.C.: Author, 1974.
  - 51. Ryder Truck Rental, Inc. Ryder's fire apparatus driver trainer's program (syllabus). Doraville, Georgia: Author.
  - 52. Smith, H.L., Cummings, J.J., & Sherman, R.A. The eyes have it. Oakville, Ontario, Canada: Ford Motor Company of Canada, Ltd., 1967.



- 53. Smithson, F.D. & Whitworth, R.A. <u>Development of an 'advanced'</u> driver education program. Milford, Michigan: General Motors Proving Ground, April 1972.
- 54. Southeastern State University. Emergency medical technicianambulance (driver training program). Oklahoma: Author, July 1974.
- 55. St. Cloud State University. Syllabus advanced driving school (E.M.S.). St. Cloud, Minnesota: Author.
- 56. St. Cloud State University. Syllabus advanced driving school (fire). St. Cloud, Minnesota: Author.
- 57. St. Cloud State University. Syllabus advanced driving school (police). St. Cloud, Minnesota: Author.
- 58. State of Florida, Police Standards and Training Commission,
  Division of Standards and Training. 320 hour recruit
  training curriculum (administrative rule on Fleet Safety
  and Driver Improvement). Florida: Author.
- 59. Texas A & M University System, Texas Engineering Extension Service, Fire Protection Training Division. Emergency driver training in Texas (diagrams). College Station, Texas: Author.
- 60. Time Inc. The time-life book of the family car. Rand McNally, 1973, 1975.
- 61. Training Key #92. Pursuit Driving (out of print).

  Gaithersburg, Maryland: International Association of Chiefs of Police, Inc.
- 62. University of North Carolina, Highway Safety Research Center.

  Emergency skills resources for beginning drivers. Chapel
  Hill, North Carolina: Author, September 1975.
- 63. U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. Highway safety plan course. (administrative and instructional guide). Washington, D.C.: Author, April 1977. (DOT-HS-802-267).
- 64. U.S. Pepartment of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. Highway safety plan course. (instructor materials). Washington, D.C.: Author, April 1977. (DOT-HS-802-269).



- 65. U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. Highway safety plan course. (participant materials). Washington, D.C.: Author, April 1977. (DOT-HS-802-268).
- 66. U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. School bus driver instructional program. (trainee study guide). Washington, D.C.:
  Author, 1974. (DOT-HS-801-087).
- 67. U.S. Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. School bus driver instructional program. (trainee study guide--advanced unit). Washington, D.C. Author, 1974. (DOT-HS-801-088).
- 68. U.S. Department of Transportation, Transportation Systems

  Center. Effectiveness of Audible Warning Devices on

  Emergency Vehicles (final report). Washington, D.C.

  NTIS, 1977 (DOT-TSC-OST-77-38) (DOT-HS-021-948)
- 69. Virginia Commonwealth University, Highway Safety Training
  Center. Virginia emergency operator's curriculum
  guide. Richmond, Virginia: Publications Office, Virginia
  Highway Safety Division, 1975.
- 70. Walker, L.E. <u>Emergency vehicle operations course</u>.
  Anne Arundel County, Maryland: Anne Arundel County Police
  Department, 1974.

١,

### APPENDIX 2

Masters for Transparencies

**6**99

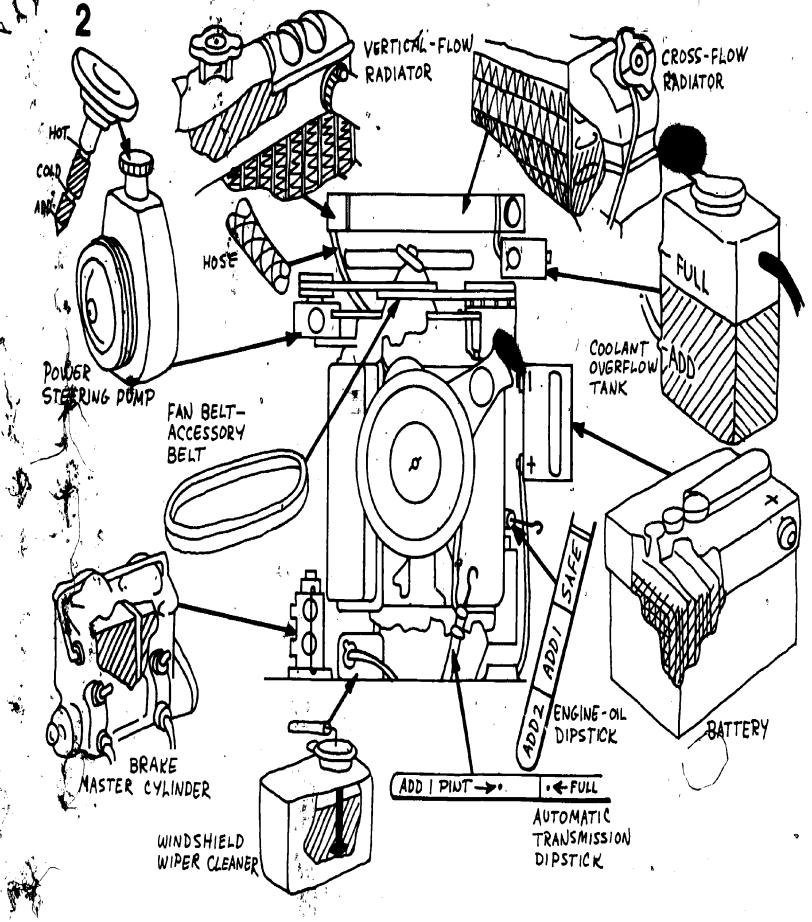
2-1

#### Note.

The Instructor Preparation Activities in Unit I-C provide directions for preparing a local map transparency. This space has been set aside for that map.

INSTRUCTOR PREPARED MAP

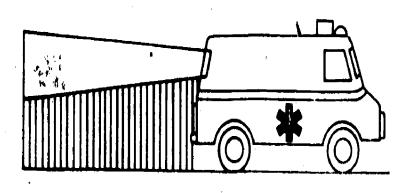
<sup>2-3</sup>700

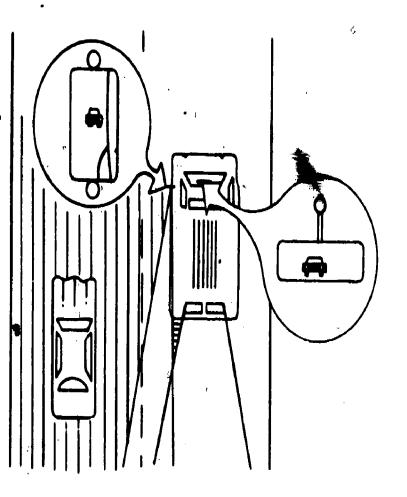


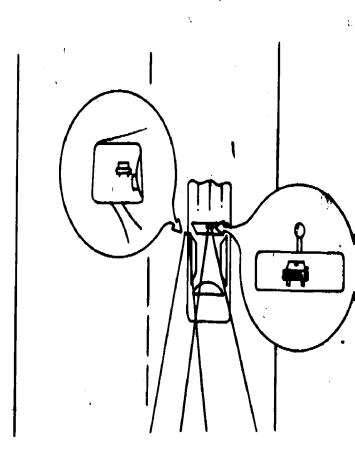
ENGINE COMPONENTS

701 ERIC

2-4





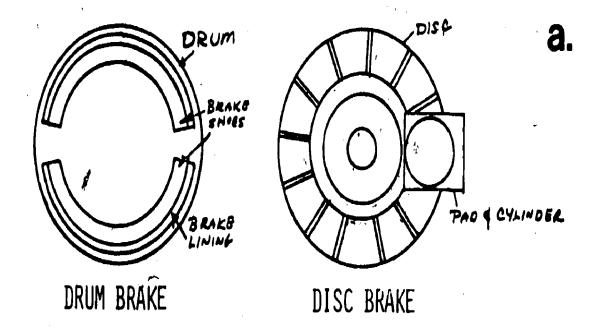


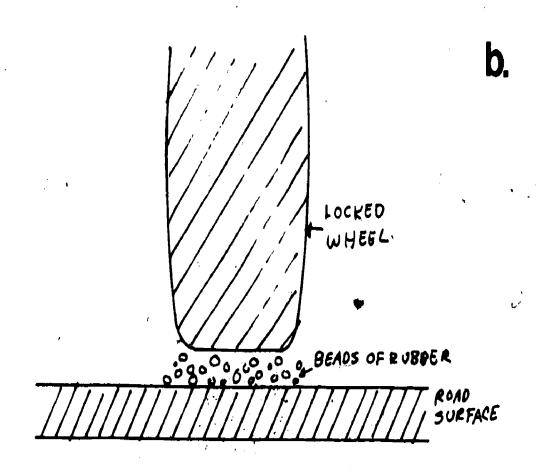
Blind Spot

MIRROR ADJUSTMENTS--BLIND SPOTS.

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

2-3703

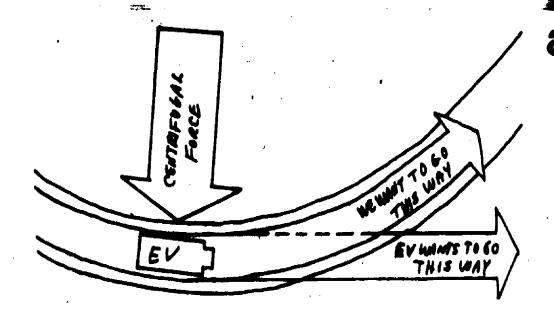




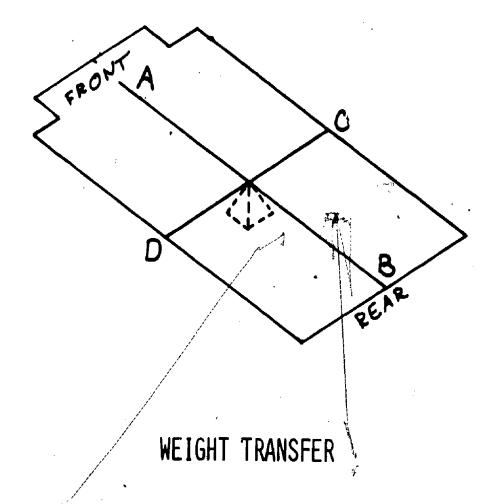
LOCKED WHEEL--SLIDING TIRE

ERIC Fruit Text Provided by ERIC

2-6 704

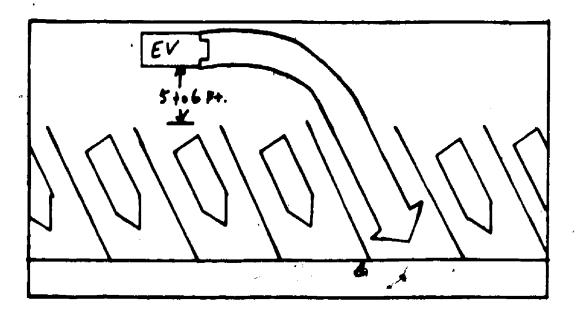


EFFECT OF CENTRIFUGAL FORCE

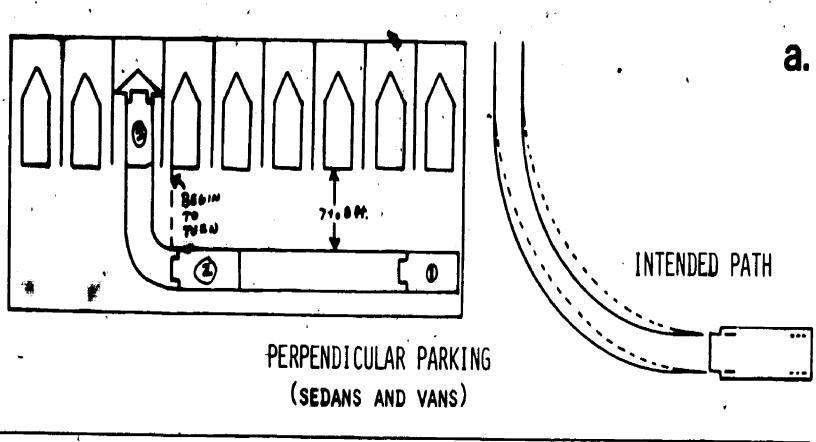


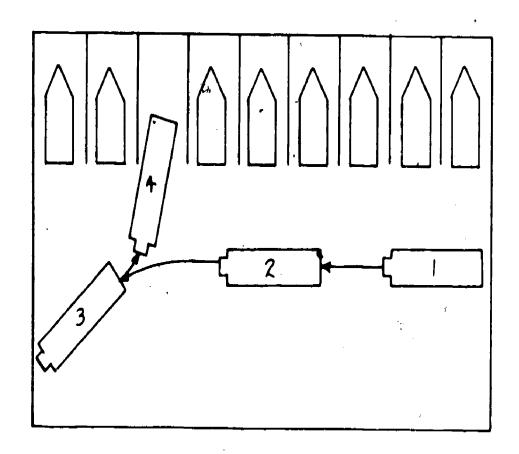
2-7





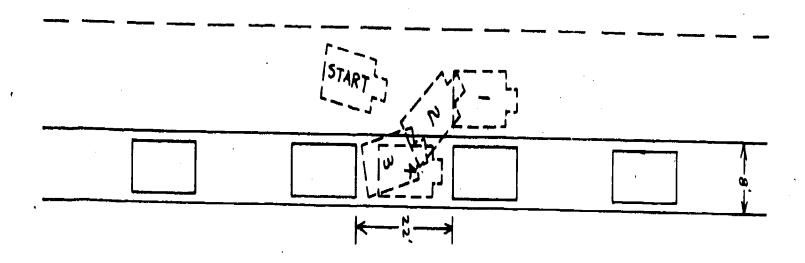
ANGLE PARKING

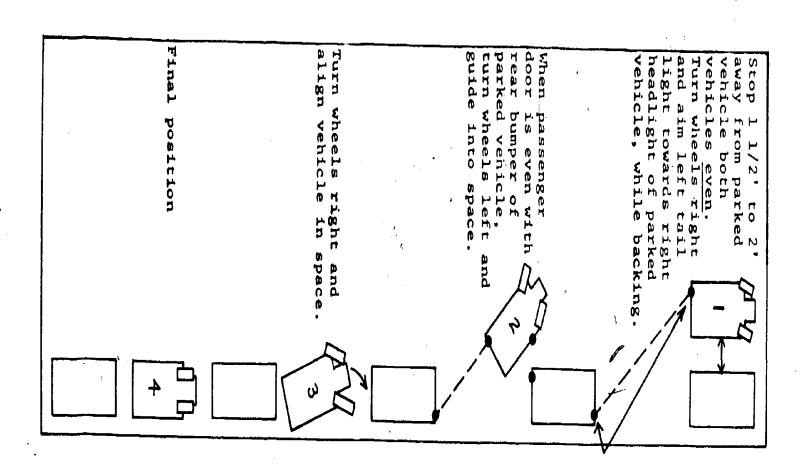




PERPENDICULAR PARKING (LONG WHEEL-BASE VEHICLES)

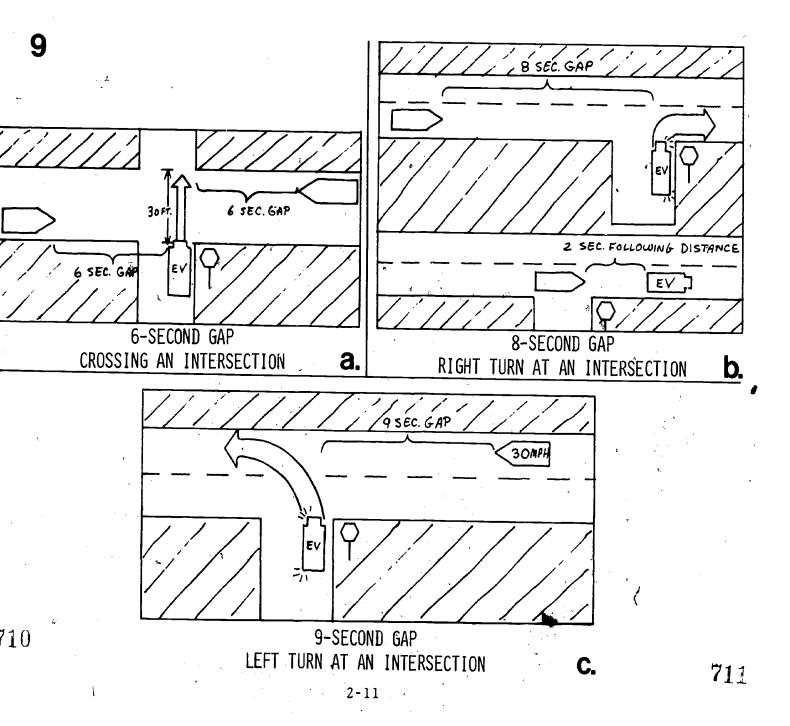
2-9



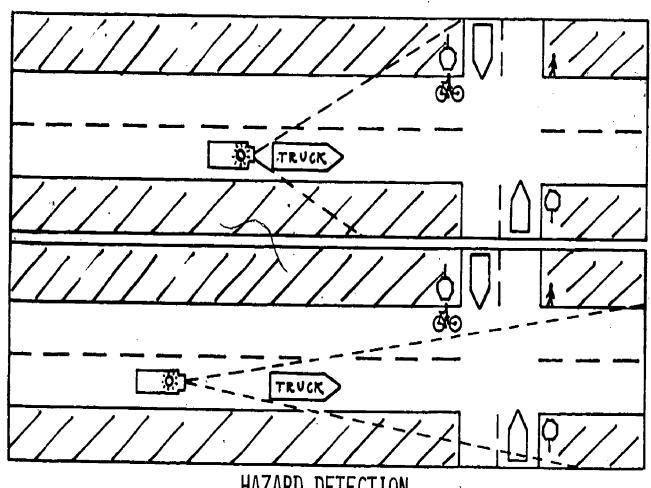


708

PARALLEL PARKING







HAZARD DETECTION

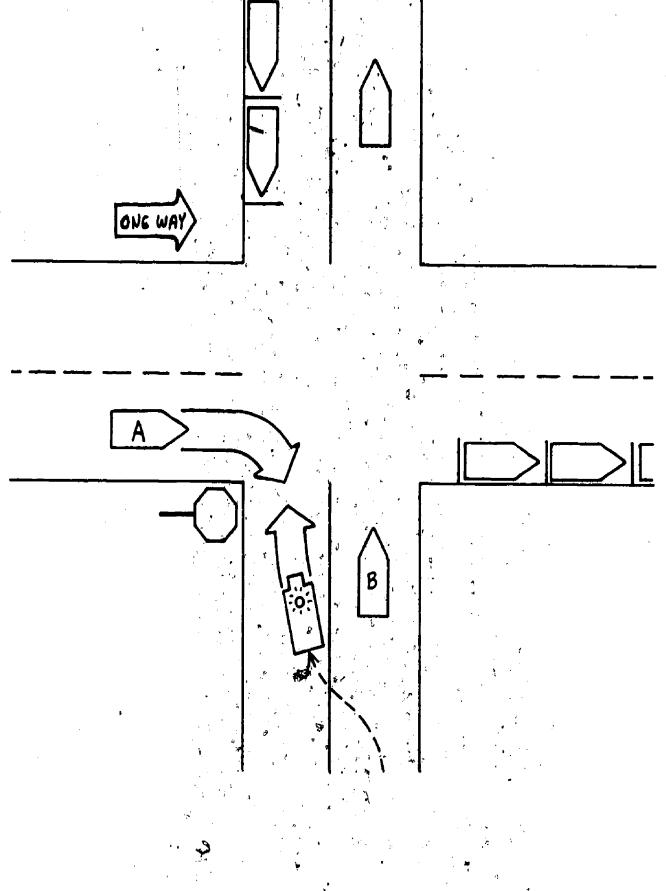
(FOLLOWING DISTANCE)

	ZARD DETECTION  ID INTÉRSECTION	
BUILDING		

2-12

782

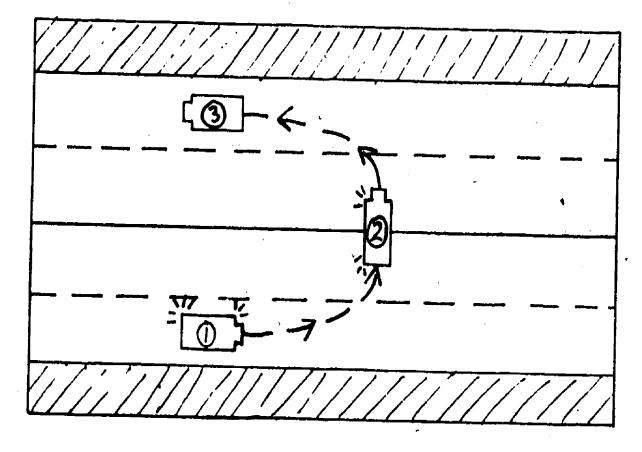
b.



PASSING AT AN INTERSECTION

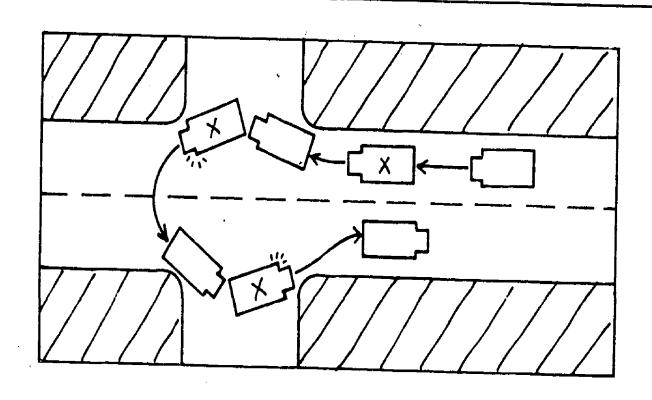
2-13 713

ERIC Full flax Provided by ERIC



U-TURN ON A FOUR-LANE ROAD

a.

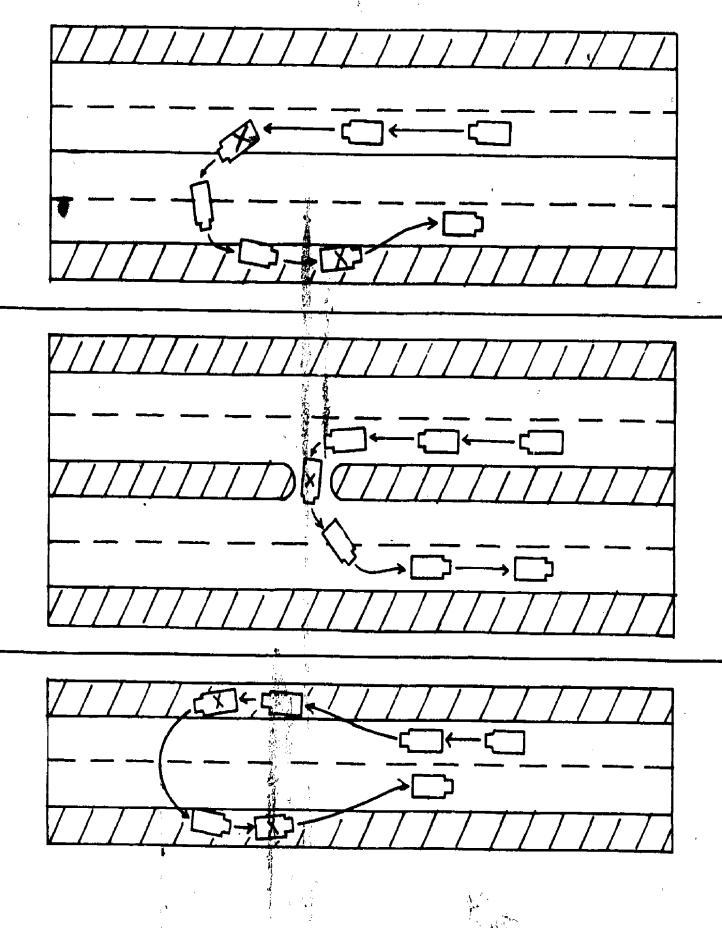


U-TURN AT AN INTERSECTION

b.

2-14 714



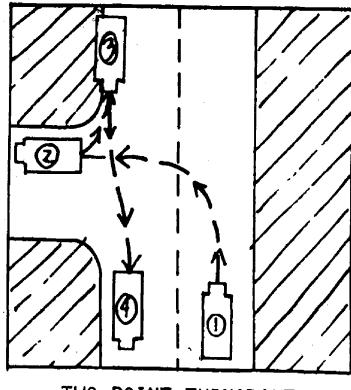


SEVERAL U-TURN ILLUSTRATIONS 715



TWO-DOINT THEMADOUT

TWO-POINT TURNABOUT (RIGHT SIDE-ROAD)

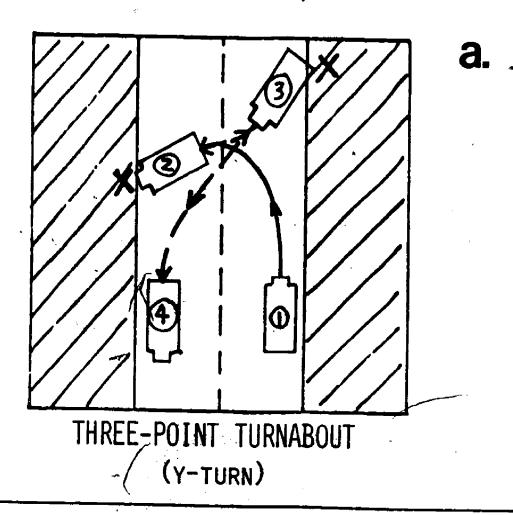


TWO-POINT TURNABOUT (LEFT SIDE-ROAD)

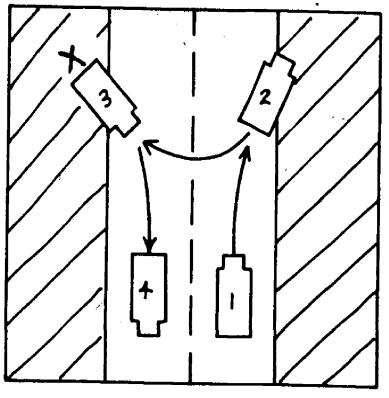
2/16

716

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC



b.



THREE-POINT TURNABOUT (BOOTLEG)

2-17

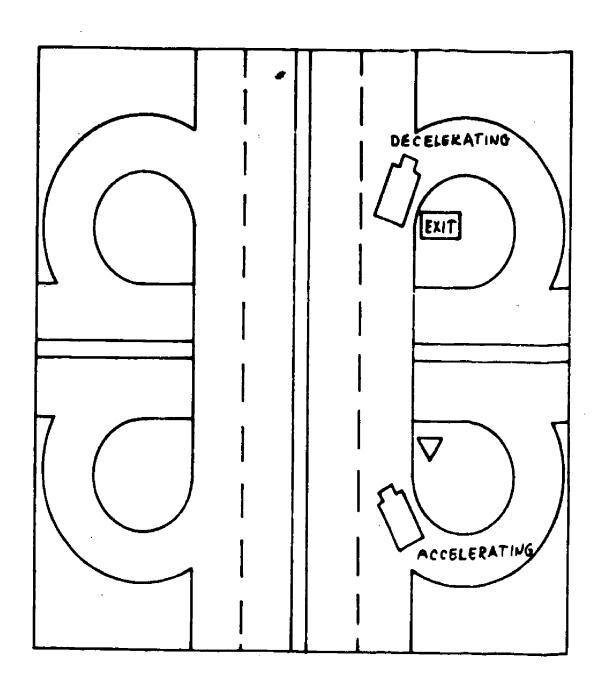


	a.
100-150' IS THE APPROPRIATE FOLLOWING DISTANCE AT 50 M.P.H.	
	***
156'	
TIME DISTANCE AT 50 MPH	:
243' IS THE STOPPING DISTANCE AT SOMPH	
FOLLOWING DISTANCE AT 50 MPH	

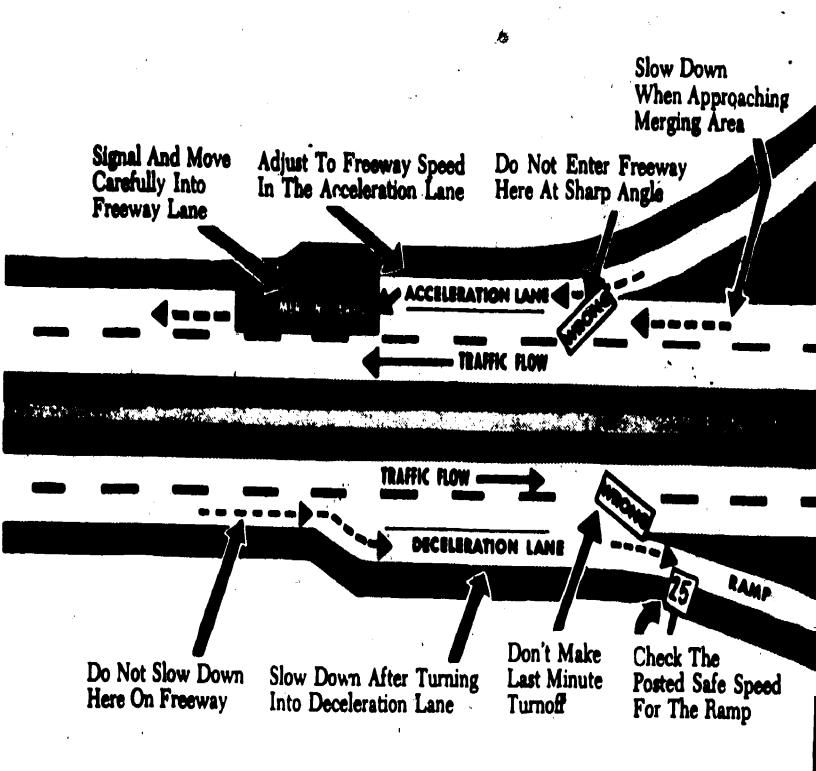
Start Count
Fixed Object 🔾
"One-Thousand-One"
<u> </u>
"One-Thousand-Two"
<u> </u>

TWO-SECOND RULE

ERIC Frontided by ERIC



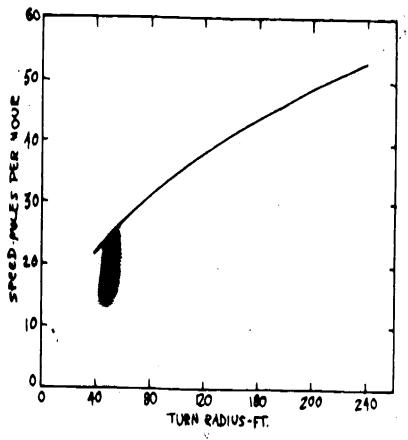
CLOVERLEAF



ENTERING AND EXITING FREEWAYS

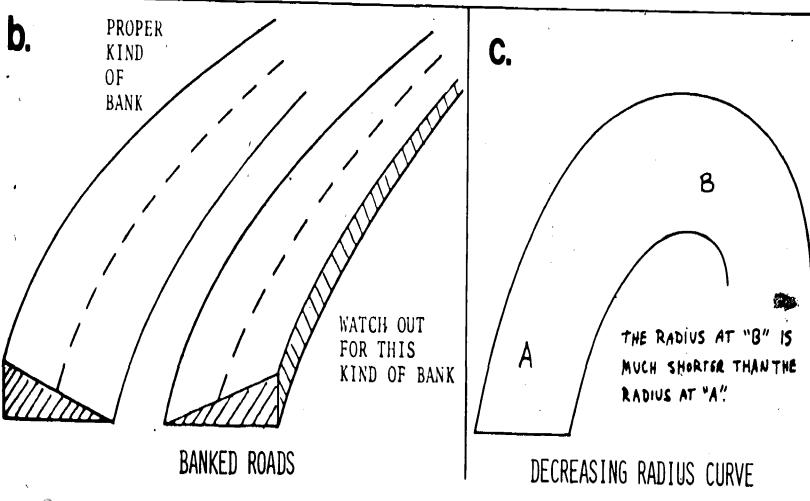
ERIC Full Toxis Provided by ERIC





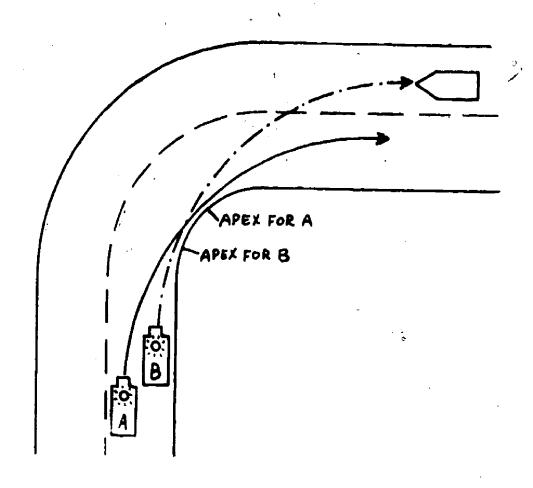
a.

MAXIMUM SPEED FOR TRAVELING CURVES



ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

2-21 721



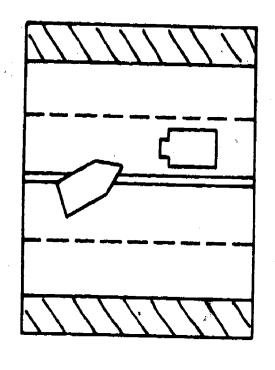
APEX OF CURVE

722

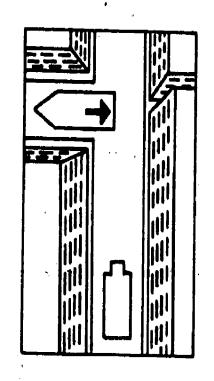
2-22



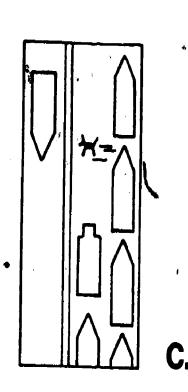
\$ 10

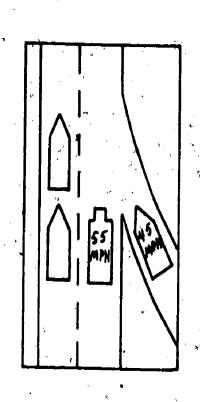


a.

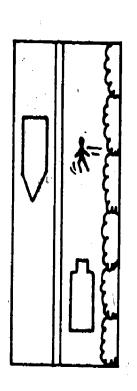


b





d



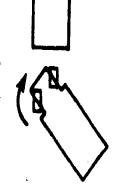
**e**.

WHAT WOULD YOU DO? (PRACTICE)

2-23

723

ERIC Full Tax Provided by ERIC



7. Steering control is reestablished.

6. To control fishtailing in the opposite direction, you'd countersteer right to help ou get back on course.

5. The back end fishtails to the right.

4. The vehicle is back on course.

3. You'd steer <u>left</u>, in the direction you want the vehicle to go relative to the way it's facing.

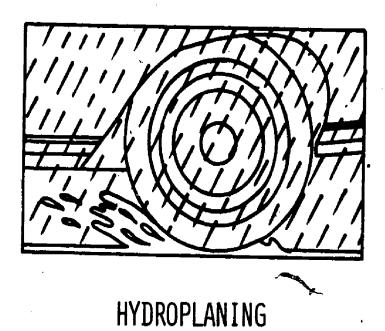
2. The back end of the vehicle skids around to the left (the vehicle is still moving forward at an angle).

1. The vehicle is going straight.

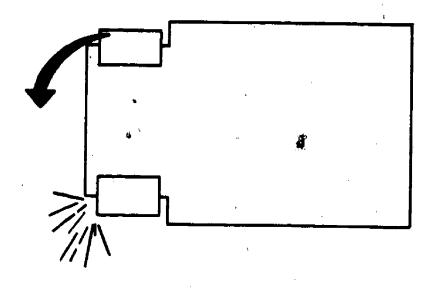
READ FROM BOTTOM



COUNTERSTEERING



a

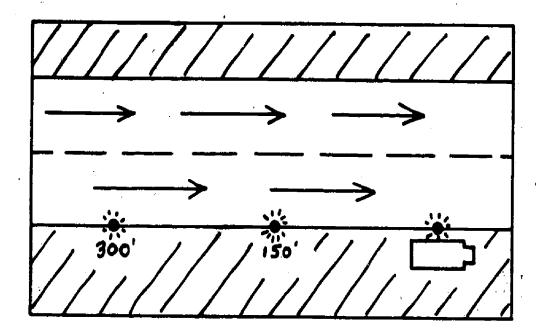


b.

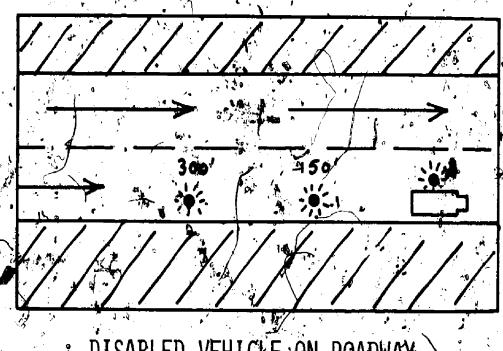
BLOWOUT

725





ONE-WAY TRAFFIC FLOW)

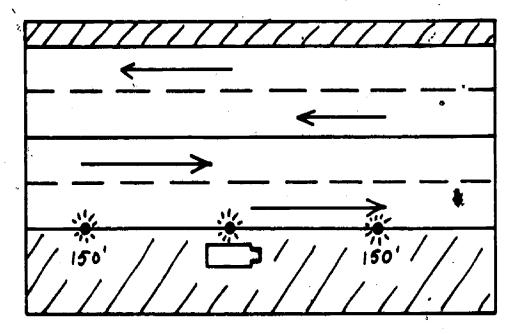


DISABLED VEHICLE ON ROADWAY (ONE-WAY TRAFFIC FLOW)

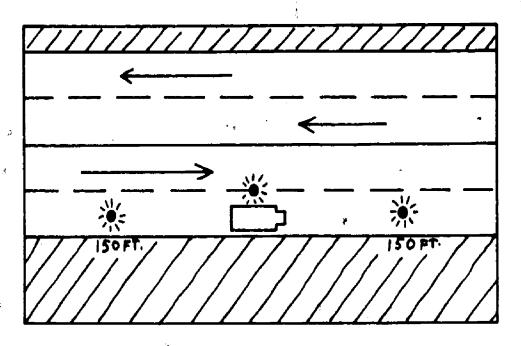
ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

-<sub>26</sub> 726

25



DISABLED VEHICLE OFF ROADWAY (TWO-WAY TRAFFIC FLOW)



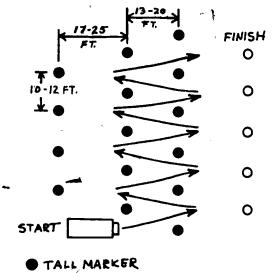
DISABLED VEHICLE ON ROADWAY (TWO-WAY TRAFFIC FLOW)



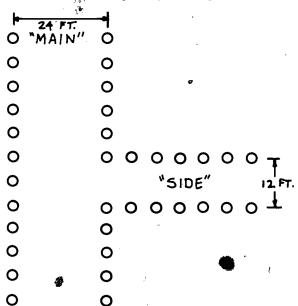
727

## SMALL AREA EXERCISES

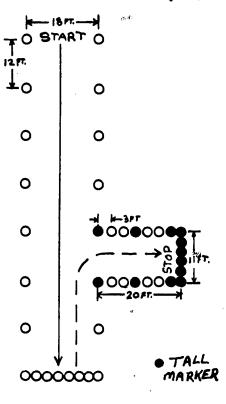
## a. DUTTON'S WEAVE



#### C. TURNABOUTS



#### b. STALL PARKING

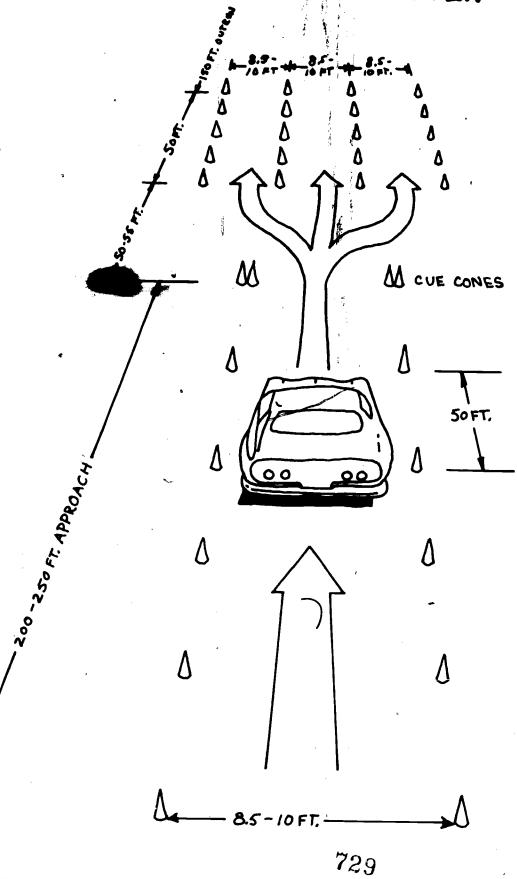


0

0

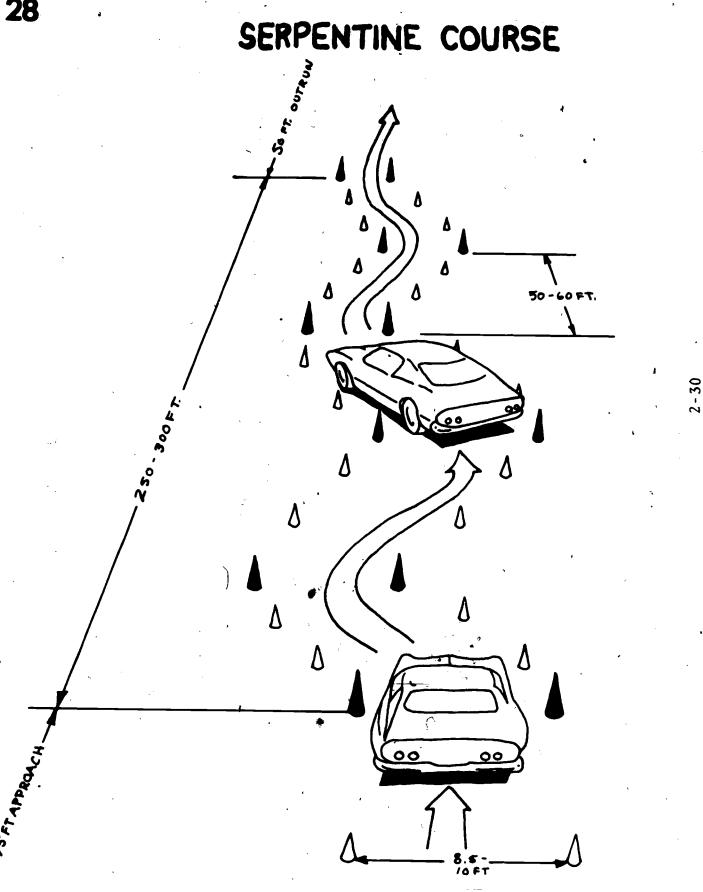
26

EVASIVE MANEUVER

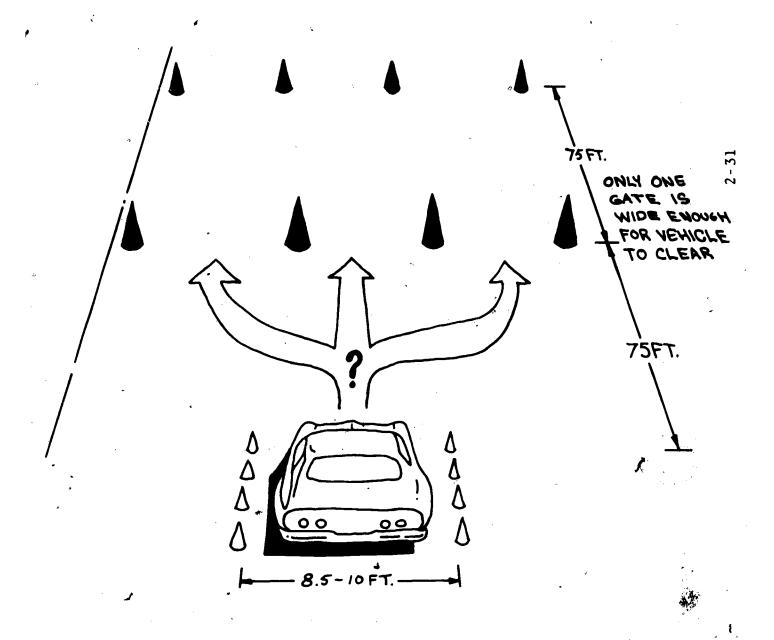


ERIC

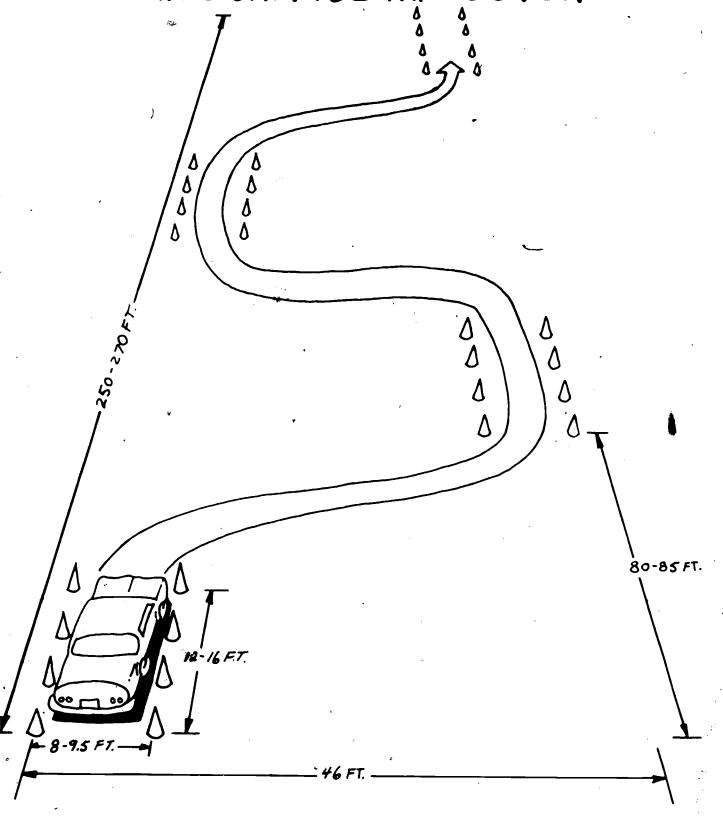
2-



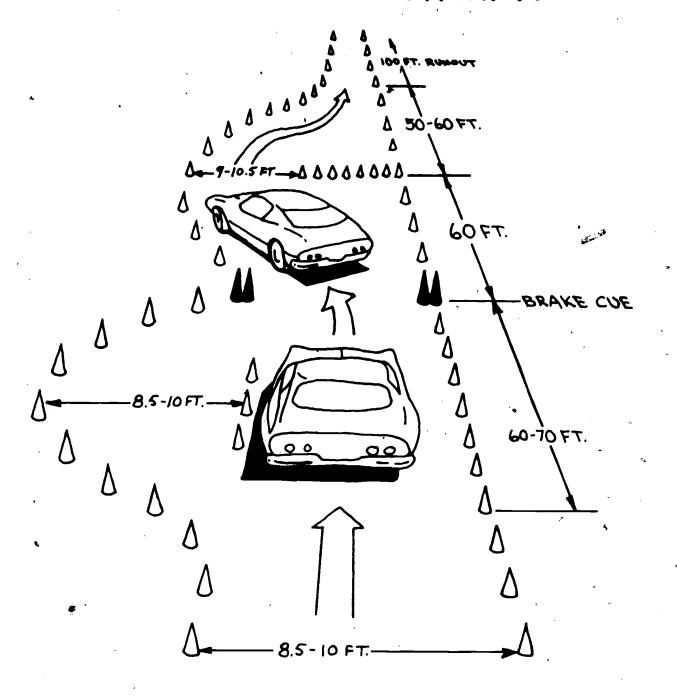
## BAIRD'S JUDGMENT



LANE CHANGE MANEUVER



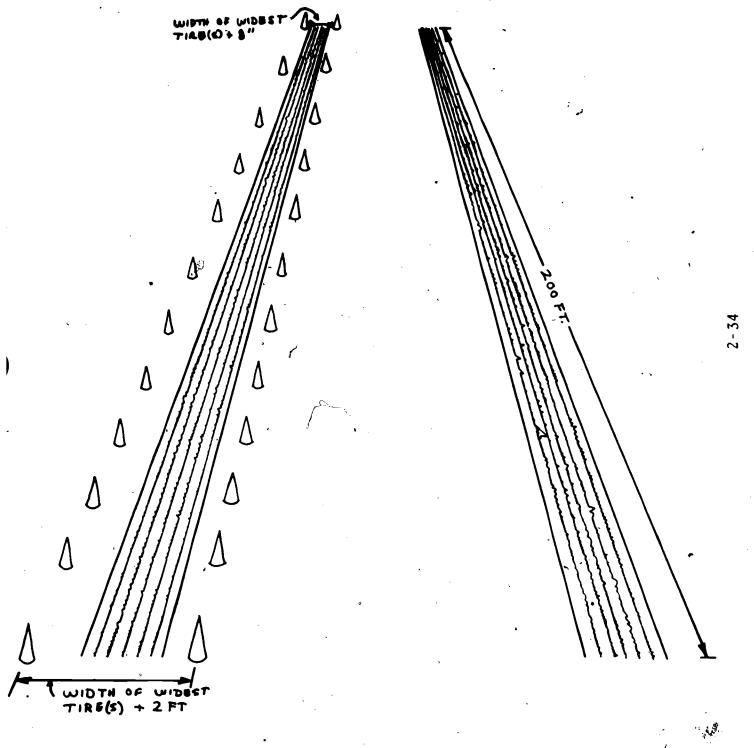
## CONTROLLED BRAKING



32

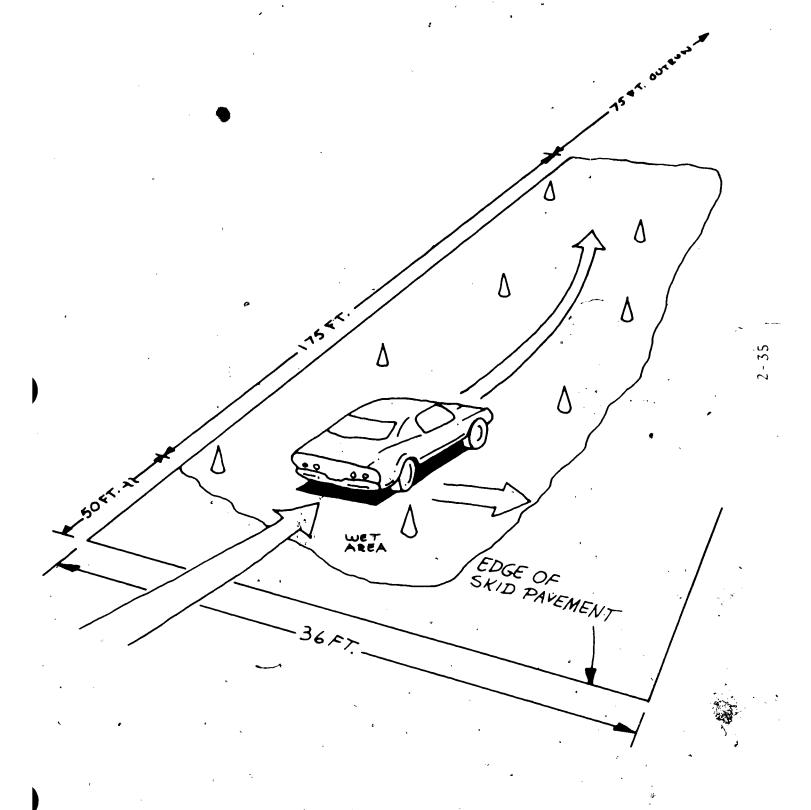
## DECREASING WIDTH TRACK

(LARGE TRUCKS ONLY )



33

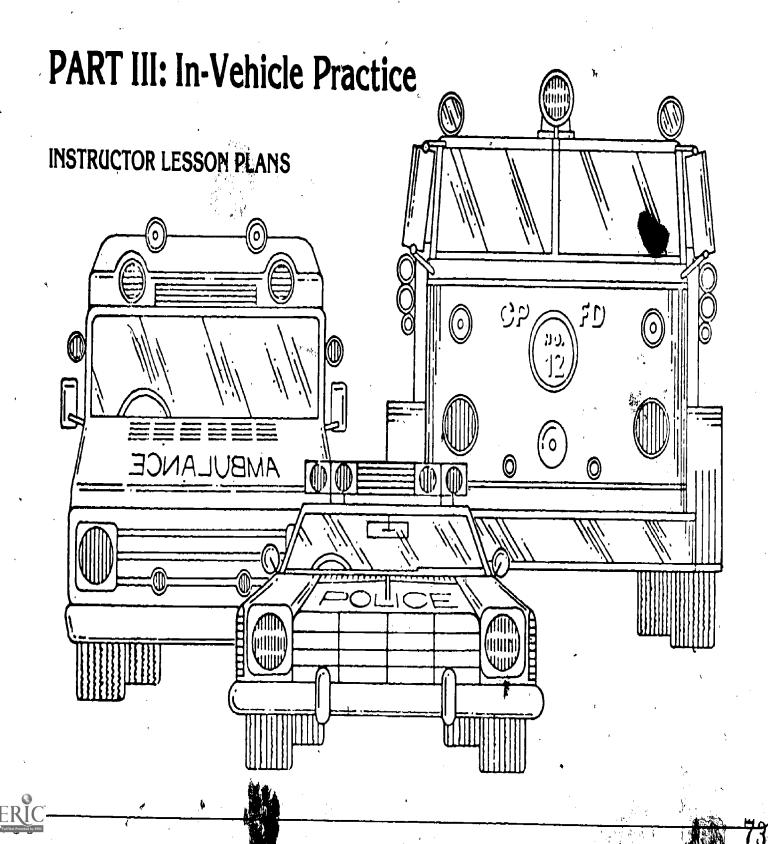
## SKID CONTROL MANEUVER



735

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

# Training Program for Operation of Emergency Vehicles



#### TABLE OF CONTENTS

### PART III - IN-VEHICLE PRACTICE

Description of Unit				· · · · · . III-1
Trainee Performance Objectives				
Instructor Preparation Activities			• • • • • • • •	III-5
Safety Rules and Regulations				· · · · · . III-7
Organization and Arrangement of Facili	ties .		• • • • • • •	III-7
Procedure for Each Maneuver				. III 9
Grading Standards				III-7
Small-Area Exercises			,	III-8
Range Exercises		• ,• • • •		<u>III</u> -11
Skid Pad Exercise				-17



#### Description of Unit

art III of this curriculum is different from Parts and II. The majority of this section is devoted to practical (in-vehicle) exercises; trainees will practice and demonstrate their ability to operate an emergency vehicle. Three important points for you to remember:

- 1. There is no Trainee Study Guide for this part of the course, since the majority of learning activity occurs in the vehicle.
- 2. It is assumed that you are qualified by prior experience and/or training to teach in-vehicle maneuvers.
- 3. Trainees should practice in the same type of vehicle they will operate on the job (independent of their emergency service).

#### Classroom Portion

The purpose of the classroom portion of Part II is to provide an overview of the in-vehicle practical exercises:

- 1. Organization and arrangement of facilities.
- 2. Safety rules and regulations.
- 3. Procedure for each maneuver.
- 4. Grading standards.

#### In-Vehicle Portion

The trainees will practice three discrete sets of exercises:

- 1. Small area exercises designed to provide practice in judging clearances and in backing up.
- 2. Range exercises designed to build proficiency in all basic control tasks.

#### Description of Unit (Continued)

- 3. Skid pad exercises designed to provide practice in skid-control techniques.
- 4. Observers Students not under instruction or assisting in course set-up, should ride in the vehicles as observers. Those students assigned to ambulance should take turns riding on the cot as a "patient" to experience patient exposure.

#### Trainee Performance Objectives

By the end of Part III, the trainees will demonstrate proficiency in small area, range, and skid pad maneuvers. Proficie will be assessed on the basis of:

- 1. Correctness of the procedure.
- 2. Smoothness of the maneuver (instructor rating).
- 3. Whether the maneuver was completed without knocking over any cones.
- 4. Speed in MPH for completing the maneuver (range exercises only).

Specific maneuvers to be demonstrated are:

#### 1. Small Area:

- a. Dutton's Weave (sedan and van only).
- b. Turnabouts
- c. Stall Parking (van only).

#### 2. Range Exercises:

- a. Evasive Maneuver.
- b. Serpentine.
- c. Baird's Judgment.
- d. Lane Change.



#### Trainee Performance Objectives (Continued)

- e. Controlled Braking.
- f. Decreasing-Width Track (large truck only).
- 3. <u>Skid Pad Exercise</u> (sedan only).

#### Instructor Preparation Activities

#### Classroom

- 1. Preparation for page III-7. Compose and reproduce as a handout, a complete live of Safety Regulations for the driving range area. The safety regulations must be keyed to your local requirements. Possible regulations include:
  - a. EVs, when being run through maneuvers, will use either headlights or emergency lights.
  - b. No unauthorized vehicles on range during exercises.
  - c. All EV occupants will wear occupant restraints and safety helmets on the driving range.
  - d. Persons assigned to set up cones will wear bright clothing and stand well off the paved area.
  - e. Fire extinguishers will be carried in all range vehicles.
- 2. Preparation for pages 8 through 18. Make transparancies (or sufficient paper copies) of the in-vehicle exercise. Use the Masters of Transparancies in Appendix 2 (Nos. 26-33).
- 3. Make a sketch of the overall layout of the driving range. The sketch should be of sufficient detail to show buildings and other landmarks, and to show the sequence of the maneuvers. (The Transparancy Masters in Appendix 2 indicate a suggested sequence for the exercises.)

Equipment: Chalkboard and chalk; overhead projector.

Materials: Enough copies of Safety Regulations and sketch of layout for all trainees; Transparancies No. 26 through 33.

#### In-Vehicle Practice

- 1. Review the sections of the Course Guide relating to driving range train
- 2. Set up all exercises on the driving range. Try out each one at entry-lows (first run) speed, and at the maximum speed (that required for "Excellent Rating"). Remember \$
  - a.. The dimensions given on the drawings will for most EVs. The shorter distances are for sedans and the longer distances are for larger may need to adjust these distances for specific vehicles.
  - b. The speeds given for the range exercises we established for a specific set of vehicles (those used in the pilot test of this curriculum). These vehicles were equipped with retread bias-ply tires, and the driving range had a "popcorn asphalt" surface. You may need to adjust these speeds on the basis of driving range surface, vehicle suspension, or the type of tires used on the vehicles. NOTE:

    "First-rung speed should be attainable by most (but not all) of your trainees before training.
  - c. After you have established the proper cone spacing and speed requirements, mark cone positions with a det of spray paint. A second color can be used to indicate placement of tall cones.
- 7. The skid pad exercise requires a wehicle equipped with a roll bar. Ideally, the skid vehicle will have slick tires and be equipped with a separate rear-wheel brake which can be activated by the instructor from the right-front seat. Two options exist for increasing the extent of skid:
  - a. Use a series of comes arranged 50° apart in a straight line (instead of the pictured, curved lane) and have trainees drive a serpentine through the comes.
  - b. Apply to the surface any of the commercially available substances designed to increase slipperiness.
- 4. If more than one range instructor will conduct the program, it is important for all instructors to apply consistent and similar grading criteria. The best way to accomplish this is for instructors to "teach" one another after the course has been laid out.

Equipment: See Course Guide.

Materials: See Course Guide.

UNIT IN-VEH	ICLE PRACTICE		i.		<b>"</b>	UNIT PAGE	III÷7
INSTRUCT	ONAL CONTENT/	PRESENTATION GUID	EUNES			NOTES	
SAFETY RULES AND REGULA	w <sub>is</sub>				<del></del>		
		<b>3</b>	•		•		6 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
-Distribute list of saf	ety rules, and regu	ulations. Discuss e	each safety	rule,			
	À	•				, <i>f</i>	
ORGANIZATION AND ARRANG	EMENT OF FAMILITIE	S 🎉	٠,		*		
-Distribute a copy of t	he physical layout	of the range to ea	nch tráinee.	de-	U	4	
scribe the sequence of	the exercises.	) - 12 <b>3</b> 0		,			ata j
4 - <sup>66</sup> , 6		•		.		, , ,	
PROCEDURE FOR EACH MANE	UVER		. 1		•	•	
-Review the procedure fo	or each maneuver (	from the following	ten pages).	. PR	ESENT TRANS	PARANČIEL	26 THROUGH
		,	(	33	. TIMIL	VIVALOTEO	a: All William
GRADING STANDARDS		u		٠,	. /		
Explain how grading wi	Il òccur and the c	tandarde for analysis			•	1.	
, I see j-wainy Ha	- occur and the 2	canuarus 101 gradin	g		H JH	4	
				,		, ,	· Ak
		; ;	•	24	,		
	9 . 1		\$. •			FV.	
<i>i</i> .	į.	į			<b>\</b>	18	
•			,		, ,,	<i>y</i> * ' ' '	
•	<b>#</b>				•		1 L.
,	·	<b>/</b> •	1 .				7
	j	•			*	L'AL.	, /k
	,		•	*	11		4.00

.0

#### **SMALL-AREA EXERCISES**

#### Dutton's Weave\*

A. Description: This exercise will provide practice in precise forward and backward control of the EV in cramped quarters, at low speed.

It will illustrate proper backing techniques and the use of mirrors to judge rear and side clearances.

#### B. Procedure:

- 1. This is a 60-second, timed event.
- 2. The EV is driven alternately forward and backward in the pattern indicated on the drawing.
- 3. EV should stop approximately 1' from the outer row of cones before changing direction.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

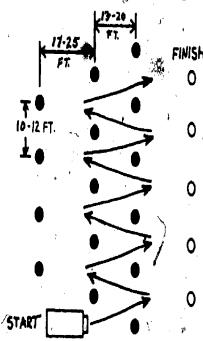
- 1. Over or understeering.
- 2. Steering in the wrong direction (in "Reverse").
- 3. Difficulty using mixtors to judge position.
- 4. Vehicle not centered in relation to outer rows of cones.
- 5. Driving too slowly (not completing in 60 seconds).

#### D: Criteria for Excellent Rating (3 Error-Free Runs):

- 1. Completed in 60 seconds or less.
- 23 All cones standing.

#### \*This exercise is recommended for sedans and vans only.

## 26a. DUTTON'S WEAVE



TALL MARKER

#### Stall Parking

A. Description: This exercise provides the van or modular EV operator with practice in backing the EV into a stall such as an Emergency Room loading ramp. It illustrates the proper procedure for stall parking and, through the use of cones, the most important cues to look for.

#### B. Procedure:

- 1. The EV is driven bey the "stall" (which is perpendicular to the main "road").
- 2. "partner" is stationed against the far wall of the stall to provide guidance.
- 3. The EV is backed into the center of the stall.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

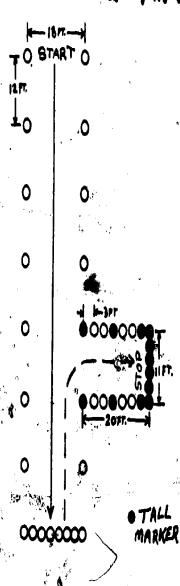
- 1. \*Over or understeering in reverse.
- 2. Relying on mirror when partner can provide better information.

#### D. Criteria for Except Rating

- 1. EV positioned a center of stall.
- 2. Rear of EV stopped within 1 of rear stall markers.
- 3. All cones standing.

\*Van only.

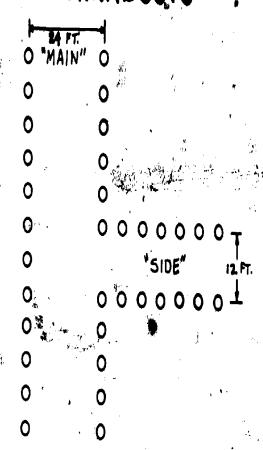
26b. STALL PARKING



#### Turnabouts

- A. <u>Description</u>: This exercise provides trainees with practice in performing turnabouts using left and right-hand side roads. Cones are used to outline the "roads," but any intersection on the driving range could be used.
- B. Procedure/Criteria: The procedure for temabouts is illustrated on Transparencies 14 and 15 and explained on pages I-F-44 through I-F-47.

## 26c. TURNABOUTS



EVASIVE MANEUVER

(ERCISES '

Maneu**ve**r

ription: This exercise provides that the proper iniques for executing an evasive maneuver. It will demonte that, using proper handling techniques, an operator avoid an obstacle in a short distance (even at high speed). It also illustrate that panic-braking often requires more ance than an evasive maneuver.

edu**c**e:

Establish proper entry speed and maintain throughout . (25 mph for first run).

Use 3 and 9 o'clock hand position on sedan steering wheel.

At cue cones, Instructor indicates "Left," "Right," or remains silent. Vehicle operator:

- a. Selects correct lane (NOTE: If Instructor remains silent, center lane is correct).
- b. Steers to and through proper lane.

ible Performance Problems:

Slow reaction to command.

icipating Instructor's command.

Jnder or oversteering.

eria for Excellent Ra (3 Error-Free Runs)

Speed: 45 mph through

Correct lane selection.

ll cones standing.

M M CUE CONES V 85-10 FT.

27



#### Serpentine Course

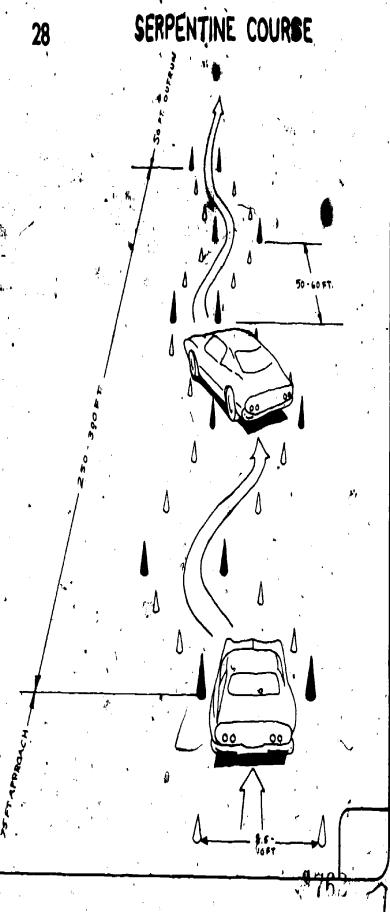
A. <u>Description</u>: This exercise projection in directional control. It will demonstrate that throttle control and timing affect the ability to steer.

#### B. Procedure:

- 1. Establish proper entry speed and maintain throughout (20 mph for first run).
- 2. Steer so that vehicle passes closest to black divotal) cones on the inside of curves.
- 3. Establish rhythm in throttle use and steer such that weight transfer is smooth and equation throughout exercise.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

- 1. Improper entry angle.
- 2. Under or oversteering.
- D. Criteria for Excellent Rating (3 Error-Free Runs):
  - 1. Speed: 25 mph throughout.
  - 2. Smooth, rhythmic control.
  - 3. All cones standing.



#### Baird's Judgment

A. Description: This exercise provides practice in judging clearances. It will illustrate that even small differences in gap size can be visually detected.

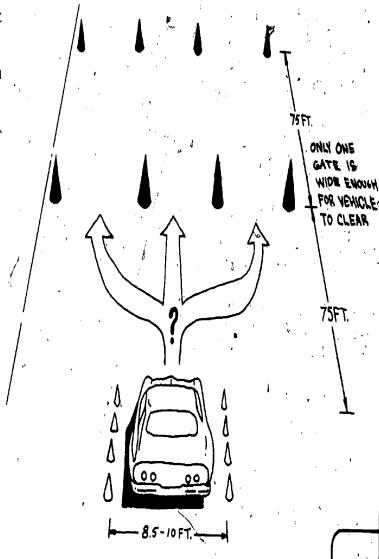
#### B. Procedure:

- 1. Before each run-through, one of the two center cones in each row is moved about 6" to the right or left. Moving the cone will leave only one of the three gates sufficiently "open" for the EV to clear.
- 2. Establish proper entry speed and maintain throughout (35 mph for first run).
- 3. Steer so that vehicle passes through largest gate in each row of cones.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

- 1. Reacting too slowly.
- 2. Correct selection of gate, but consistently hitting either the right or left cone.
- D. <u>Criteria for Excellent Rating</u> (3 Error-Free Runs)
  - 1. Speed: 45 mph throughout.
  - 2. All cones standing.

BAIRD'S JUDGMENT

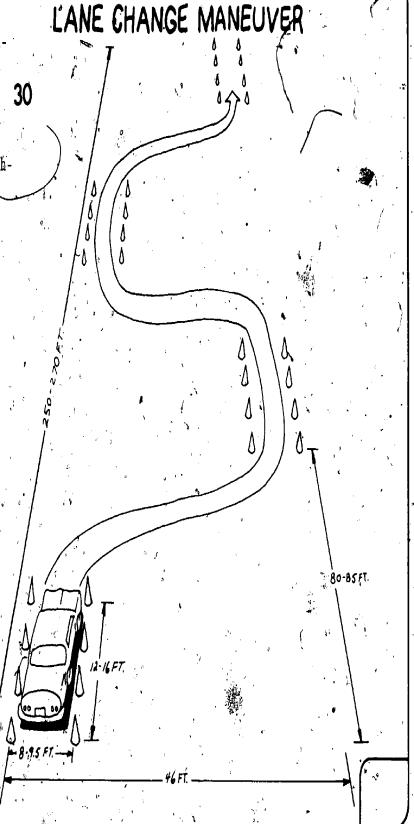


#### Lane Change Maneuver

A. Description: This exercise provides practice in making 90° turns, and in establishing a proper approach for precise alignment through lanes.

#### B. Procedure:

- 1. Establish proper entry speed and maintain throughout (20 mph for first run).
- 2. Follow track indicated on illustration.
- 3. Use 3 and 9 o clock hand position on steering wheel.
- 4. Use overhand method for turning wheel.
- C. Possible Performance Problems:
  - 1. Speed fluctuation.
  - 2. Beginning turns too early or too late.
  - 3. Under or oversteering.
- D. Criteria for Excellent Rating (3 Error-Free Runs):
  - 1. Speed: 25 mph throughout.
  - 2. All cones standing.



#### Controlled Braking

A. Description: This exercise provides practice in performing a maximum braking stop while maintaining directional control. It will also provide practice in determining the braking point just before wheel lockup and will illustrate that steering with locked wheels is impossible.

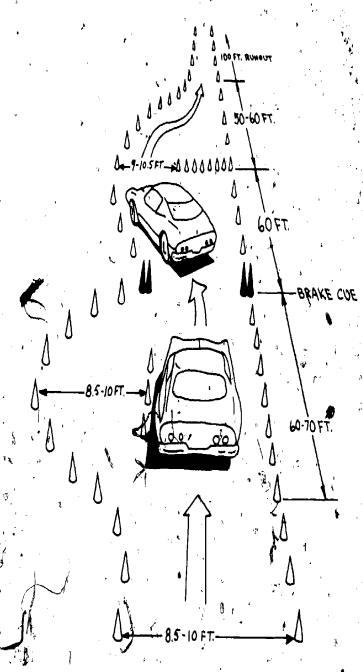
#### B., Procedure:

- 1. Establish proper entry speed (30 mph for first run).
- Approximately 80' before brake cue comes, Instructor indicates "Left" or "Straight." Vehicle operator:
  - a. Steers in direction indicated by Instructor.
  - b. Applies brakes as front of EV reaches cue cones.
  - c. Steers left around barricade without loss of directional control.
  - d. Returns to lane and stops in first 20' of runout.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

- 1. Anticipating Instructor's command.
- 2. Braking before cue.
- 3. Locking wheels (loss of directional control).
- 4. Over or understeering
- D. Criteria for Excellent Rating (3 Error-Free Runs):
  - 1. Speed: 45 mph.
  - 2. Stop within 20' of runout.
  - 3. All cones remain standing.

## CONTROLLED BRAKING



#### Decreasing-Width Track\*

Description: This exercise provides trainees with practice in negotiating a narrow track with a large EV.

#### Procedure:

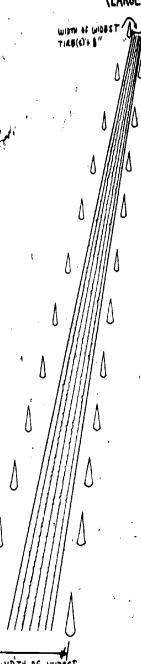
- 1. Establish proper entry speed and maintain throughout (25 mp) for first run).
- 2. Drive the front and rear wheels of the left side through the decreasing-width track.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

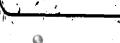
- 1. Misalignment at start of track.
- 2. Speed fluctuation.
- D. Criteria for Excellent Rating (3 Error-Free Runs):
  - Speed; 35 mph throughout.
  - 2. All cones standing.

## DECREASING WIDTH TRACK

(LARGE TRUCKS ONLY)







\*Large truck only.

SKID PAD EXERCISEN

#### Skid Control Maneuver

A. Description: This maneuver provides practice in controlling rear-wheel and four-wheel skids.

#### B. Procedure:

- 1. Establish entry speed (25 mph for first run).
- 2. Follow the lane indicated by the cones.\*\*
- 3. Üse appropriate skid-recovery techniques.

#### C. Possible Performance Problems:

- 1. Accelerating to recover from skid.
- 2. Locking wheels.
- 3. Excessive countersteering (resulting in further skidding).
- 4. Steering (to correct skid) in wrong direction.
- 5. No action taken to recover from skid.

#### D. <u>Criteria for Excellent Rating</u> (3 Error-Free Runs):

- 1. Speed: 35 mph.
- 2. Appropriate skid-control procedures.
- 3. All cones standing.

33 SKID CONTROL MANEUVER EDGE OF SKID PAVEMENT

<sup>\*</sup>Skid pad exercises should be performed using only specially-equipped sedans. Vans, modular vehicles, or large trucks should not be used on the skid pad.

<sup>\*\*</sup>An acceptable, alternate layout for this exercise is five cones (50' apart) down the center of the skid pad.

Vehicle operator weaves through the cones; the resulting track is similar to the serpentine.